



## PORTALS TO THE PAST AND TO THE FUTURE

The advent of the digital era has raised questions on the future course of library development. The challenge of maintaining a balance between their educational, cultural and service roles has presented libraries with new challenges – challenges which their rich and varied media holdings, modern technical infrastructure and information specialist competence well equip them to face.

This fourth revised and extended English edition of “Portals to the Past and to the Future” by Jürgen Seefeldt and Ludger Syré, now in its fifth German edition, is an in-depth state-of-the art report on current German librarianship. Lavishly illustrated, the book traces the history of libraries in Germany, portrays the various types of library and cites many examples of the outstanding achievements of nationwide library cooperation in the Federal Republic of Germany. The reader will gain both a revealing insight into the cultural and educational policy underlying the German library system and an outline of the profession. Special attention has been paid to current developments such as the preservation and presentation of the common cultural heritage and the emergence of the digital library.



This book has been translated not only into English but also into Arabic, Italian, Japanese, Spanish, Russian and Turkish and is now the standard work on libraries and librarianship in Germany. Because of the interest it has generated internationally, it was decided to publish the German and English versions of this new edition simultaneously. The book provides trainee librarians and non-librarians alike with a clear picture of the way in which libraries were able to cooperate in the aftermath of the Second World War to overcome the vagaries of the federal system and create an effective decentralized library network more than a match for the challenges of the third millennium.

ISBN 978-3-487-15563-0

[www.olms.de](http://www.olms.de)



PORTALS TO THE PAST AND TO THE FUTURE

SEEFELDT · SYRÉ

IO



JÜRGEN SEEFELDT  
LUDGER SYRÉ



## PORTALS TO THE PAST AND TO THE FUTURE

LIBRARIES  
IN GERMANY

PUBLISHED BY  
BIBLIOTHEK & INFORMATION  
DEUTSCHLAND E.V. – THE FEDERAL  
UNION OF GERMAN LIBRARY AND  
INFORMATION ASSOCIATIONS (BID)



4TH REVISED  
AND EXTENDED EDITION

OLMS



# **PORTALS TO THE PAST AND TO THE FUTURE**

LIBRARIES IN  
GERMANY

JÜRGEN SEEFELDT  
LUDGER SYRÉ

JÜRGEN SEEFELDT  
LUDGER SYRÉ

# PORTALS TO THE PAST AND TO THE FUTURE

LIBRARIES IN  
GERMANY

PUBLISHED BY BIBLIOTHEK & INFORMATION IN  
DEUTSCHLAND (BID) – THE FEDERAL UNION OF GERMAN  
LIBRARY AND INFORMATION ASSOCIATIONS

WITH A FOREWORD BY HEINZ-JÜRGEN LORENZEN

TRANSLATED BY JANET MACKENZIE  
INCORPORATING A REVISED TRANSLATION  
OF THE 1<sup>ST</sup> EDITION BY DIANN PELZ-RUSCH

4<sup>TH</sup> REVISED AND EXTENDED EDITION



2017  
Georg Olms Verlag  
Hildesheim • Zürich • New York



Das Werk ist urheberrechtlich geschützt.

Jede Verwertung außerhalb der engen Grenzen des Urheberrechtsgesetzes ist ohne Zustimmung des Verlages unzulässig. Dies gilt insbesondere für Vervielfältigungen, Übersetzungen, Mikroverfilmungen und die Einspeicherung und Verarbeitung in elektronischen Systemen.

This work is copyright protected by German copyright law

No part of this book may be utilized, translated, reproduced on microfilm or stored and processed in electronic form without the permission of the publishers

Die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek verzeichnet diese Publikation in der Deutschen Nationalbibliografie; detaillierte bibliografische Daten sind im Internet über <http://dnb.d-nb.de> abrufbar.

The German National Library lists this publication in the German National Bibliography. Detailed bibliographic data are available online at <http://dnb.d-nb.de>

© Georg Olms Verlag, Hildesheim 2017

[www.olms.de](http://www.olms.de)

All rights reserved

Printed in Lithuania

Printed on acid-free, age-resistant paper

Cover design and Layout: Weiß-Freiburg – Graphik & Buchgestaltung

Printed by: BALTO Print

ISBN 978-3-487-15563-0

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|  |           |   |           |
|--|-----------|---|-----------|
| Foreword by Heinz-Jürgen Lorenzen,<br>President of the Federal Union of German<br>Library and Information Associations ... | 7         | • The State Library of Berlin—Prussian<br>Cultural Heritage (Staatsbibliothek zu<br>Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz ..... | 45        |
| German librarianship in figures .....  | 9         | • The Bavarian State Library in Munich<br>(Bayerische Staatsbibliothek) .....   | 47        |
| <b>1 HISTORY</b>   | <b>10</b> | • The Central Subject Libraries .....   | 48        |
| The Historical Development<br>of Libraries in Germany .....  | 10        | State Libraries (Landesbibliotheken)<br>and other Regional Libraries .....  | 50        |
| • From the Middle Ages until<br>Secularisation .....   | 10        | Libraries of Higher<br>Education Institutions .....   | 52        |
| • From the 19th Century to the<br>Second World War .....   | 13        | • University Libraries .....  | 53        |
| • From Divided to United Germany .....   | 17        | • Libraries of the Universities<br>of Applied Sciences and other<br>Higher Educational Institutions .....                   | 55        |
| • Libraries in the 21st Century .....  | 21        | Special and Technical Libraries .....   | 56        |
| <b>2 EDUCATION AND CULTURE</b>   | <b>23</b> | Public Libraries .....  | 61        |
| Germany's Political, Administrative<br>and Organizational Structure .....  | 23        | • Local Authority Public Libraries .....  | 62        |
| Educational Institutions .....   | 27        | • Mobile Libraries .....  | 69        |
| • General Schools .....  | 27        | • State Service Centers for<br>Public Libraries .....   | 71        |
| • Vocational Training .....  | 30        | • Public Libraries maintained<br>by the Churches .....  | 72        |
| • The Public and Private Media Sector .....  | 30        | Special Areas of Public Librarianship .....   | 73        |
| • Continuing Professional Education<br>and Training .....  | 32        | • Children's and Young People's<br>Libraries .....  | 73        |
| • Adult Education and<br>Community Colleges .....  | 32        | • School Libraries .....  | 75        |
| • Universities and other<br>Higher Education Institutions .....  | 32        | • Music Libraries .....   | 78        |
| The Book Trade .....   | 36        | • Libraries and the Promotion<br>of Reading.....  | 80        |
| Archives .....   | 38        | • The Intercultural Work of the<br>Public Libraries .....   | 83        |
| <b>3 LIBRARY DIVERSITY</b>   | <b>40</b> | • Library Services for<br>Special User Groups .....   | 85        |
| The Multifaceted Picture<br>of Libraries in Germany .....  | 40        | • Other Libraries .....   | 88        |
| The Many Different Types<br>of Funding Institutions .....  | 40        | The Information Infrastructure .....  | 89        |
| • Public Funding Institutions:<br>Federal Government—Federal States—<br>Municipalities—Foundations .....                   | 40        | <b>4 PROFESSIONS AND<br/>ASSOCIATIONS</b>   | <b>91</b> |
| • Church Funding .....   | 41        | The Organization(s) of German<br>Librarianship .....  | 91        |
| • Private Funding .....  | 42        | The Library Professions .....   | 91        |
| The Many Different Types of Library .....  | 42        | The History of Professional<br>Librarianship Training .....   | 93        |
| The Great National Libraries .....   | 42        | Librarianship Training and Training<br>Institutions in Germany .....  | 94        |
| • The German National Library<br>(Deutsche Nationalbibliothek) .....   | 43        |   |           |



|   |            |  |            |
|---|------------|--|------------|
| Continuing Professional Education and Training for Library Staff .....  | 97         | Cooperative User and Information Services .....                            | 135        |
| Cooperation Among German Libraries ...  | 97         | • National interlibrary Lending .....                                      | 135        |
| • The Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID) as Umbrella Organisation .....               | 98         | • Electronic Document Delivery Services .....                              | 137        |
| • German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv) .....  | 100        | • Cooperative Information Services .....                                   | 138        |
| • Network of Excellence for Libraries (knb) of the dbv .....  | 103        |  |            |
| • Association of Information and Library Professionals (Berufsverband Information Bibliothek e.V. – BIB) .....        | 104        | <b>6 BETWEEN THE PRESENT AND THE FUTURE—THE LIBRARY IN THE DIGITAL ERA</b> | <b>140</b> |
| • Association of German Librarians (Verein Deutscher Bibliothekarinnen und Bibliothekare e.V. – VDB) .....            | 106        | Parameters and strategic issues .....                                      | 140        |
| • ekz Library Service, Reutlingen .....   | 107        | Concepts and models for the public library of the future .....             | 144        |
| • The Bertelsmann Foundation, Gütersloh ..  | 108        | • Libraries as ‘Third Places’ .....  | 144        |
| • The Goethe Institute e.V., Munich .....   | 110        | • Proposals for a Library of the Future .....                              | 146        |
| • The German Society for Information and Knowledge (Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen e.V. – DGI) .... | 112        | Vision and reality in academic libraries ...                               | 149        |
| International Cooperation .....   | 112        | Cultural Heritage .....  | 151        |
|   |            | • The German Digital Library .....   | 152        |
|   |            | • Preservation and Conservation .....                                      | 154        |
|   |            | • Research into Nazi Plunder .....   | 155        |
|   |            | The Digital Library .....  | 155        |
|   |            | • Retrospective Digitization .....   | 155        |
|   |            | • Open Access .....  | 157        |
|   |            | • Long-term Archiving .....  | 157        |
|   |            | • Digital Information Structure .....                                      | 159        |
|   |            | Summary and Outlook .....  | 160        |
| <b>5 LIBRARY COOPERATION IN GERMANY</b>   | <b>116</b> | <b>APPENDICES</b>  | <b>162</b> |
| Cooperation within Local, Regional and National Services .....  | 116        | The Authors .....  | 162        |
| The Principles of Library Cooperation ...   | 116        | The Translator .....   | 162        |
| Cooperation in Market Scanning and Acquisitions .....   | 118        | • Picture References (In Order of Appearance in the Text) .....            | 163        |
| • The German Research Foundation and the Specialised Information Services Programme for Research .....                | 118        | • Alphabetical Index by Location .....                                     | 164        |
| • The Collection of German Imprints (Sammlung Deutscher Drucke) .....   | 122        | Winners of the National Library Prize ....                                 | 165        |
| • Book Review Cooperation in Public Libraries (Lektoratskooperation) .....  | 123        | Holders of the BID Karl Preusker Medal ..                                  | 165        |
| Cooperation in Cataloguing and Subject Indexing .....   | 124        | Further Reading .....  | 165        |
| • The Regional Library Network Systems ...  | 126        | • Books and Yearbooks .....  | 165        |
| • Periodicals Indexes .....   | 130        | • Periodicals and Open E-Journals .....                                    | 165        |
| • The National Periodicals Database (ZDB) ..  | 130        | • Internet Addresses, Blogs .....  | 165        |
| • The Electronic Periodicals Library .....  | 131        |  |            |
| • Bibliographies of Early Imprints .....  | 132        | Subject Index (Names, Institutions, Abbreviations) .....                   | 169        |

## FOREWORD

The publication of this fourth updated and revised English edition of “Portals to the Past and to the Future—Libraries in Germany” is timed to coincide with the 106th German Library Congress in Frankfurt. The first original German edition was published during the 96th Congress of the International Federation of Library Associations IFLA in 2003 and has proved to be a great success; it has since been translated into English and a further eight languages including Arabic and Chinese. The book is a veritable compendium of the history, structure and development of German libraries and information centres, interlibrary cooperation, and the activities of the various associations representing the interests of librarianship and information science.

Our visitors and partners from overseas looking for a brief, up-to-date introduction will find this work indispensable. Students of librarianship and information science already value “Portals” as a basic handbook and reliable course companion. For those working in libraries and information centres the new edition of this essential standard work offers an up-to-date review of the latest developments in the German library landscape, while for politicians with an interest in library issues it will be an invaluable aid to understanding the contribution of modern library work to the success of cultural and educational policy, and to identifying the significant characteristics of the information society. Finally, library patrons will find here a wealth of useful information on German library and information centre holdings and services.

I would like to express my warmest thanks to the joint authors Jürgen Seefeldt and Ludger Syré for agreeing to update “Portals to the Past and to the Future—Libraries in Germany” once more. As is always the case, major changes were necessary. The statistical material has been completely and carefully updated, and the on-going developments of the last six years have meant that the authors have been forced to re-write over a quarter of the text.

These changes reflect the unbroken vitality of library progress. Developments within



Heinz-Jürgen Lorenzen, President of the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations

society and emerging technologies have made it both imperative and possible to find new ways of discovering and delivering information and knowledge. Considerable additions have been made in the following areas:

- Libraries and the promotion of reading
- Inter-cultural library work in public libraries
- Public libraries as Third Places
- Public libraries and their future role in society
- The Specialised Information Services for research
- Cultural heritage: the preservation of cultural assets and research on works confiscated during the Nazi period
- The Digital Library: retrospective digitization, open access, long-term archiving and the structure of digital information

The BID is anxious to ensure that this book in its present revised form reaches the international library and information scene in as many languages as possible. We would like to thank Janet MacKenzie for the English translation of this new edition, which is being published in parallel with the German original.

The fifth German, and this fourth English edition of the present work could not have been published without the unparalleled professional cooperation of the publishers, George Olms. My special thanks go to them and I look forward to continuing our fruitful partnership.



The two new and spectacular buildings in Ulm and Cottbus do impressive justice to the slogan of the 100th Convention of German Libraries "Libraries for the future – a future for libraries" in 2011. The scholarly *Ulm City Library* (Baden-Württemberg), founded in 1518, was amalgamated with the city's Free Library and Reading Hall in 1968. In 1999 the Cologne-based architect Gottfried Böhm was commissioned to build a new City Library. The inauguration of the Central Library, a construction in pyramid form in glass and metal situated directly opposite the historic Ulm Minster, took place on April 15 2004. Over 350,000 books and media are housed in 6,700 m<sup>2</sup> floor area. The illustration shows the Central Library as it appeared on a flyer to mark the joint Bavarian and Baden-Württemberg Library Conference held in 2004 in Ulm and Neu-Ulm.  
– Photo: C. Seelbach

We are particularly obliged to the publishers for allowing us to publish an online version of Portals, which will greatly raise general awareness of the book.

We would like to express our gratitude to all those who have so generously contributed new photographic material to the revised edition. These optical highlights make this absorbing work even more attractive and will doubtless help to increase the book's worldwide impact.

Finally, my thanks go once more to the authors Jürgen Seefeldt und Ludger Syré. I

hope—both for them and for ourselves—that this publication will be widely read in Germany and throughout the world and will lead to an increased appreciation of the truly outstanding achievements of German libraries and information centres.

Dr. Heinz-Jürgen Lorenzen  
President of the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations  
(BID—Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V.)

The Brandenburg Technical University has gained a new landmark and Cottbus town in Brandenburg a new link with the university campus in the unusual new University Library building by the architects Herzog and de Meuron from Basel. The revolutionary concept is based on the new information and media services structure introduced at Brandenburg Technical University. Various institutions, merged in 2004, are now all housed in the Information, Communications and Media Centre (IKMZ). The University Library was designated "Library of the Year 2006" in recognition of this concept.  
– Photo: R. Schuster



## GERMAN LIBRARIANSHIP IN FIGURES 2015

### Libraries in total (all categories, all institutions, full-time and voluntary staff, DBS participants only)

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Total number of registered libraries (according to the library search engine BibS) | 13,433    |
| Number of libraries incl. departmental and branch libraries                        | 9,858     |
| Total media collections (print and non-print)                                      | 375.0 m   |
| Circulation (in media units)   | 450.0 m   |
| Spending on media acquisitions (in Euros)  | 433.0 m   |
| Total number of staff (in FTE)   | 24,493    |
| Total spending (materials and staffing costs, excluding special libraries)         | 1,985.0 m |
| Registered (active) users  | 10.32 m   |
| Active inter-library loan orders in the German ILL system                          | 5.52 m    |
| Computer workstations  | 14,578    |

### Academic general, regional and general libraries (DBS participants only)

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Number of libraries incl. departmental libraries and other branch libraries (locations) | 741       |
| Total media collection (print and non-print)  | 377.1 m   |
| Print holdings (books, newspapers, periodicals, theses in media units)                  | 256.0 m   |
| Circulation (in media units)  | 86.8 m    |
| Spending on media acquisition (in Euros)  | 327.0 m   |
| Total number of staff (in FTE)  | 10,997    |
| Total spending (materials and staffing costs, in Euros)                                 | 1,103.0 m |
| Active inter-library loan orders in the German ILL system                               | 4.85 m    |
| User work-places in total   | 125,714   |
| - thereof computer workstations   | 16,968    |
| Registered (active) users   | 2.94 m    |

### Public libraries (DBS participants, excluding school libraries)

|   | Run by full-time and voluntary staff, all forms of funding | Run by full-time staff only, all forms of funding |
|---|--|---|
| Number of libraries incl. branches (locations)<br>(registered: 9,174) | 9,117  | 3,241   |
| Media collections (in media units)                                    | 119.0 m  | 93.0 m  |
| Circulation (in media units)  | 363.2 m  | 329.4 m   |
| Spending on media acquisitions (in Euros)                             | 105.0 m  | 91.0 m  |
| Total spending (materials and staff costs, in Euros)                  | 972.0 m  | 931.0 m   |
| Library visitors  | 119.0 m  | 106.5 m   |
| Registered (active) users   | 7.4 m  | 5.9 m   |
| Total number of staff (in FTE)  | 13,496   | 13,269  |
| Active inter-library loan orders in the German ILL system             | 0.65 m   | 0.62  |
| All forms of activities   | 0.37 m   | 0.26 m  |

### Academic special libraries (DBS participants only)

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| No. of libraries incl. departmental and other branch libraries (registered: 2,065) | 186    |
| Total media collections (print and non-print)                                      | 96.6 m |
| Print holdings (books, newspapers, periodicals in media units)                     | 24.7 m |
| Circulation (in media units)   | 1.3 m  |
| Spending on media acquisitions (in Euros)  | 25.8 m |
| Total number of staff (in FTE)   | 1,266  |
| Registered (active) users  | 0.29 m |
| Active inter-library loans in the German ILL system                                | 0.12 m |

Source: German library statistics 2015 (Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik – DBS), figures updated to 31/12/2015



# 1 HISTORY

## The Historical Development of Libraries in Germany

The reader striving for a real understanding of the structure and current situation of German librarianship should first be prepared to take a brief look at the history of Germany. A glance at an historical map of Germany through the ages will reveal the following two important details:

- The Central European territorial area, which united the German-speaking peoples, varied considerably in size through the centuries. By the end of the first millennium at the latest this area had given rise to the “German Empire”, albeit with constantly changing borders.
- The area had always been divided into individual territories; initially their number had been almost infinite but by 1803 (or more accurately 1815) this number had been considerably reduced. The division into states continued after the foundation of the German Empire in 1871 and indeed determines the structure of the Federal Republic of Germany even today, for Germany has been a federal country with 16 “Länder” (states) since 1949.

Since Germany was never a centralized state, cultural life developed and evolved primarily in the individual territories and states, and therefore assumed a distinctly regional character. The Basic Law (*Grundgesetz*, the Constitution

of the Federal Republic of Germany) refers back to this historical tradition when it defers the responsibility for almost all political matters of cultural and education importance to the *Länder*. This is to a large extent the reason why librarianship also developed primarily at regional level and has retained its basic decentralized structure up to the present day.

### From the Middle Ages until Secularisation

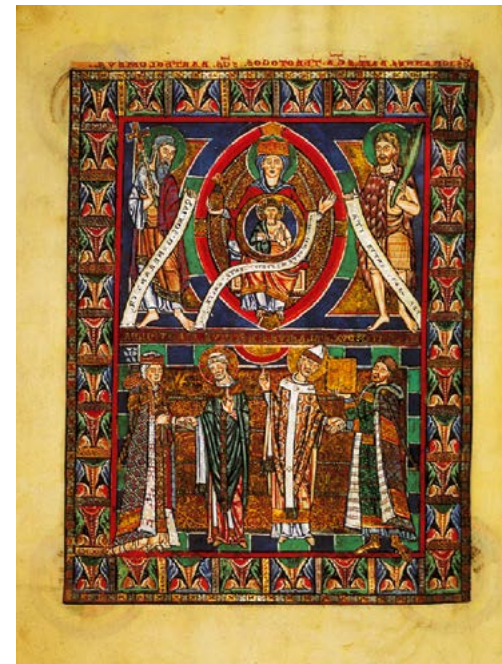
Even if libraries may have already existed in the larger cities of the Roman province of Germania, the history of German librarianship originates in the Middle Ages rather than in antiquity. As they spread from Italy and Spain in the 6th century A.D, monasteries developed into centres of book culture by virtue of the libraries (*armarium*) and copying rooms (*scriptorium*) they established and through which they acted as guardians of the classical traditions.

The first cathedral libraries on German soil were founded in the Carolingian period under the influence of the Irish and Anglo-Saxon missionaries in the 9th and 10th centuries (examples in Cologne, Mainz, Würzburg, Freising), as were the monastic libraries (*Klosterbibliotheken*), among which Fulda, Lorsch, St. Gallen, Reichenau and Murbach were the largest, possessing several hundred volumes.

By the end of the Middle Ages, the number of monastic libraries had multiplied considerably, primarily due to the foundation of the new Orders (Carthusians, Cistercians, Augustinian Canons, Premonstratensians). Those of the mendicants who chose to live in the cities (the Dominicans and the Franciscans) dedicated themselves especially to scholarship and teaching, and therefore viewed libraries as indispensable tools for their work.

Alongside the previous financiers of scholarly activities, school communities developed into

The Library of Hildesheim Cathedral (Lower Saxony), which can trace its origins back to the foundation of the Diocese in 815, possesses a Book of Hours written in the second half of the 15th century in Latin and French. The unique feature of the *Codex Rotundus* (HS 728) is its form: the 266 parchment pages are circular and have been bound together to form a round volume 9 cm in diameter. – Photo: L. Engelhardt



The Evangelary of Henry the Lion (*Evangeliar Heinrichs des Lowen*), written about 1188 in the monastery of Helmars-hausen and commissioned by the Guelphic Duke, is considered one of the most outstanding achievements of mediaeval book art. The parchment manuscript (Cod. Guelf. 105 Noviss. 20, here Fol. 19r) is held by the Duke August Library (*Herzog-August Bibliothek*) in Wolfenbüttel (Lower Saxony) and has four joint owners (the States of Lower Saxony and Bavaria, the Federal Government and the Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation). – Photo: HAB Wolfenbüttel

Because education lay firmly in the hands of the clergy during the Middle Ages, books were only very rarely owned by laypeople. Emperor Charlemagne (742–814) possessed a remarkable court library, which unfortunately was not destined to survive. Many of the post-Carolingian rulers were content with presenting magnificently decorated manuscripts as gifts to monasteries and cathedrals. Not until the nobility changed their attitude to education did writing and scholarship blossom, and collections of books could be found in the courts of kings, as well as in the aristocratic manors of the nobility.

From the 13th century onwards the culture of writing began to spread within the cities, but the number of private libraries owned by commoners remained small and not until the Humanistic period did they experience their first flowering in the form of the scholars’ library

new centres for teaching and learning from the High Middle Ages onwards (900–1300); with time, they merged to form independent institutions of the *universitas magistrorum et scholarium* and were the breeding grounds of today’s universities. In contrast to the university foundations in Italy (Salerno, Bologna), France (Paris), Spain (Salamanca) and England (Oxford), Germany’s first universities were not founded until some 150 years later. However, this led to the creation of new collections of books—though still modest, since the professors kept the most important works in their private libraries and students either made notes or copied the texts from their teachers. The oldest university foundation in the German Empire at that time was in Prague (1348), followed by Vienna (1365), Heidelberg (1386), Cologne (1388) and Erfurt (1392).

Characteristic of the development of book culture since the late classical era is the transition from scroll to book form (codex), and the use of parchment as a replacement for papyrus as material, later replaced by the cheaper paper. Books were stored in cabinets, later in niches and on long lecterns; the enlargement of the book collection was achieved by the copying and subsequent illustration of the manuscripts, and a characteristic aspect was the dominance of the Latin language.



With its 1,809 hand-coloured woodcuts, the *Schedelsche Weltchronik*, printed in 1493 by Anton Koberger in Nuremberg, is one of the most richly illustrated works from the early printing period, appearing in both a Latin and a German edition. Its author, the Nuremberg doctor and humanist Dr. Hartmann Schedel, owned the largest private library in the city at the time. The illustration shows the copy owned by the Court Library of the House of Hohenzollern (*Fürstlich Hohenzollernsche Hofbibliothek*) in Sigmaringen (Baden-Württemberg). – Photo: C. Seelbach





The Speyer Evangeliar, or Speyer Gospels, dates from around 1220 and originally belonged to the Speyer cathedral treasury. In 1792 it was brought to the episcopal palace in Bruchsal, from whence it came to Karlsruhe following secularisation. The parchment manuscript Codex Bruchsal 1 is housed in the Baden Regional Library (Baden-Württemberg) and is admired not only for its lavish illustrations but also for its three-dimensional cover. The relief figure of Christ is fashioned from gilded silver; the frame is of semi-precious jewels and ancient gemstones. – Photo: BLB Karlsruhe

around one hundred years earlier, the stage was set for the broader-based and accelerated growth of library collections. The swift and vigorous spread of printing gave flight to the spread of the ideas of the Reformation, which in turn resulted in the rise of many libraries in schools, churches and in the cities. On the other hand, the Reformation also led to the demise of the monastic libraries in many areas of Germany following the dissolution of a large number of monasteries; certain works of mediaeval theology, considered “useless”, were destroyed.

The Counter Reformation led to a wave of newly established libraries, due in this case primarily to the Jesuits who required their theological colleges to have libraries. It seems that the Jesuits were the first order to make the transition from the lectern library (*Pultbibliothek*) to the hall library (*Saallbibliothek*). The confessional schism was transferred to the universities; examples of Protestant universities are to be found in Marburg (1527) and Gießen

(*Gelehrtenbibliothek*). A new type of library, the Council Library (*Ratsbücherei*), which served the municipal administration, emerged in the 14th century and these formed the basis for many of the later scholarly city libraries. An especially early example of this is the *Ratsbibliothek* of Nuremberg, first mentioned in the year 1370.

With the discovery of printing by Johannes Gutenberg in the middle of the 15th century and the previous transition from parchment to paper as the most usual writing material

The Library of the former Benedictine Abbey in Wiblingen near Ulm (Baden-Württemberg) is an outstanding example of a rococo Hall Library. The bookshelves around the walls continue up into a gallery supported by marble pillars. The statues, representing allegories of the various branches of the sciences, and the monumental ceiling fresco form part of an overall theological and philosophical concept and provide a worthy backdrop for the “treasures of wisdom and knowledge”. At one time the monastery premises were home to the University Library of Ulm. – Photo: R. Armbruster-Mayer, Staatliche Schlösser und Gärten Baden-Württemberg



(1607), and of Catholic universities in Dillingen (1551) and Würzburg (1582). The libraries of the German universities were admittedly in a pretty desolate condition. Student numbers fluctuated considerably but at no time until the end of the 18th century were there more than 4,500 students within the German Empire.

The 15th and 16th centuries also mark the beginnings of the first court libraries (*Hofbibliotheken*) which can partially be attributed to Humanistic efforts to encourage the spread of education and partially to the rulers’ desire for status symbols, and their further development remained closely linked to the bibliophile bent and personal interests of the ruler himself. In addition to the Emperor’s Court Library in Vienna (officially founded in 1368), the court libraries in Munich (founded in 1558) and in Dresden (founded ca. 1556) are of note, as are the collections of the Heidelberg Electors, which were combined in 1558 to form the Library of the Palatinate (*Bibliotheca Palatina*), the best-known German library of the era.

After a period of decline during the Thirty Years’ War (1618–1648), it was not until the 18th century that library construction experienced an upswing along the lines of libraries in other countries. Magnificently decorated Baroque hall libraries, which were established in both monasteries and castles, reflected the tendency to combine practical requirements with aesthetic considerations. As a result of the growth in book production, library catalogues increased in significance.

Characteristic of the 17th and 18th centuries was the flourishing of the court libraries (*Hofbibliotheken*), which were founded by almost all the German princes and rulers of the time. One of the most important princely collections was established in the small town of Wolfenbüttel, seat of the court of the Duchy of Brunswick-Lüneburg. The Elector’s court library in Berlin, founded in 1661 and from 1781 known as the Royal Library, developed into and remained the most important German library right up to the period before the Second World War; today it is the State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*).

Since the dawning of humanism, the number of private libraries belonging to writers and

scholars had increased by leaps and bounds. The most important of the new universities founded during the Enlightenment was the University of Göttingen (1737). Established to provide assistance to researchers, the University Library pursued a carefully selective acquisition programme and afforded greatest priority to the newest publications needed by researchers. The books in this library were broadly classified by subject area. The first so-called Reform University, the University in Halle, was opened in 1694 and soon had more students than any other German higher education institution.

The greatest ever redistribution of book collections resulted from the secularization of 1803. This took place in southern and western Germany and was conducted along similar lines to the Reformation carried out by the Protestant rulers further north. The result was the sweeping expropriation of ecclesiastical property and its transfer to the local rulers. The book collections of the dissolved monasteries were integrated into the state libraries, predominately the court and university libraries.

### **From the 19th Century to the Second World War**

The Napoleonic era at the beginning of the 19th century put an end not only to many of the small states in Germany but also to numerous smaller universities. Prussia forged ahead with the development of a new university landscape, a series of far-reaching state reforms transformed higher education, and the idea of the modern lending library, which influenced the development of the academic library in the 19th century, was born.

In 1871 a fundamental reform of German librarianship took place, again in Prussia, and spread rapidly. At the same time there began a period of active library building. Stacks were established as the predominate form of storage for the rapidly increasing book collections as the sciences blossomed and new disciplines emerged. Opening times were extended; lending regulations were liberalized. In order to make the collections of all the libraries of the institutions of higher education in a particular city available to the users, cooperation and coordination schemes were initiated, resulting in the Prussian Union Catalogue (*Preußischer*



In 1914 the Royal Library in Berlin (*Königliche Bibliothek zu Berlin*) was re-housed in a new building in the Wilhemine style (architect: Ernst von Ihne) located on the boulevard Unter den Linden and also housing the Royal Academy of Science and the University Library. The showcase of this building was the cupola hall. This photograph shows one of the eight inner courtyards with a side entrance. – Photo: Wikipedia



*Gesamtkatalog*), the Berlin Titles of Printed Books (*Berliner Titeldrucke*), the Prussian Cataloguing Rules for the Alphabetical Catalogue or Prussian Instructions (*Preußische Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge* – PI), as well as the Reference Office (*Auskunftsbüro*) and the interlibrary loans system.

The rapid growth in book production forced libraries to base their acquisitions policy on a more disciplined selection and led later to the

establishment of subject-centred collections and the exchange of holdings within the interlibrary loan framework. Furthermore, the rise in the number of copies printed—thanks to technical advances in paper and book production (invention of the machine press, use of wood-based paper)—and the consequent reduction in book prices after about 1840 all had a lasting effect on libraries.

From the middle of the 19th century onwards, continually increasing subject specialization in the universities led to the formation of quick-reference collections which in time developed into independent faculty and departmental libraries (*Institutsbibliotheken*) alongside the main university library (*Zentralbibliothek*). The continuing specialization in research coupled with the rising number of new publications also led to the emergence of a new type of library both within and beyond the university, namely, the special library (*Spezialbibliothek*); the era of the general library providing a comprehensive service had (at least in theory) passed. In the 19th century, separate technical universities were established to serve the needs of rising technology; they boasted purpose-designed libraries (for instance, in Aachen, Berlin-Charlottenburg, Dresden, and Karlsruhe). Not only the government but also commercial companies, clubs, societies and associations amassed a number of significant special collections covering most aspects of social and economic life.

The transfer of private property from the princes to the state following the revolution of 1918/1919 was characteristic of the further development of the court and regional libraries (*Hof- or Landesbibliotheken*). The princes had admittedly already often been willing to open

Following the English and French examples, the German “hall libraries” also mastered the transition to the “stack library” system; the physical division into reading room, stacks and administration prevailed. A good example is the modern functional architecture (architect: Ludwig von Tiedemann) of the University and Regional Library of Halle (Saxony-Anhalt). The upper levels were exclusively devoted to stack accommodation, the lower levels partially so. The Library, built in 1880, was restored between 1995 and 1999 and is a protected historic building. – Photo: Univ. Library Halle



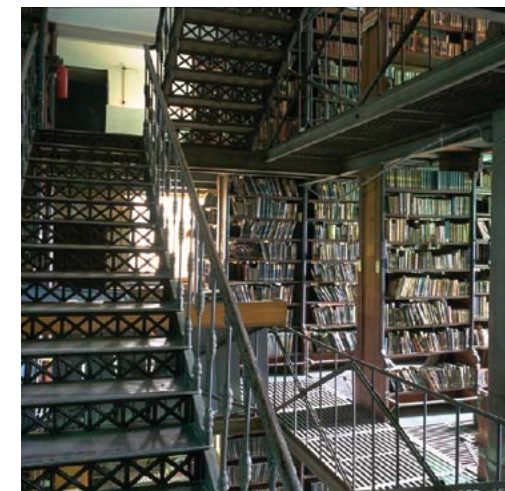
their court libraries to the scholarly public. However, many of them could not keep pace with the increasing number of publications, so that the growth of their libraries stagnated.

Following the French Revolution, the idea of a national library (*Nationalbibliothek*) emerged in many European countries, but failed to have any lasting impact in Germany either in 1848 or in 1871 following the establishment of the German Empire. The foundation of the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig in 1912 remained a private initiative of the Association of the German Book Trade (*Börsenverein der Deutschen Buchhändler*). But at least this led to the creation of a central point for the acquisition of all German-language publications which have been collected in their entirety since 1913 and indexed in the German National Bibliography (*Deutsche Nationalbibliographie*).

The reading circles and reading societies which had already formed in the second half of the 18th century alongside the commercial lending libraries can be regarded as the prede-

cessors of the public libraries, satisfying the reading interests of the upper middle class with regard to educational literature, fiction and non-fiction. In 1828, a school library was opened in Großenhain in Saxony, which was later commissioned by the municipality to further the cause of general education, and is thus regarded today as the first-ever public city library (*Stadtbibliothek*) in Germany.

Inspired by the idea of general education, a wave of library foundation swept through Germany from the middle of the 19th century onward, sustained by the liberal societies, churches and the workers’ movement. In many cities, libraries for the general public (*Volksbüchereien*) were established. However, only under the influence of the American public libraries did the concept of a publicly accessible library for all gain acceptance, leading in many places to the merging of the former



The present stacks of the University and Regional Library of Halle (Universitäts und Landesbibliothek Halle) consist of free-standing iron supports extending over four floors and supporting iron mezzanine ceilings and wooden shelving. The open grating of the ceilings allows additional light to enter through the glass roof. – Photo: Univ. Library Halle

The State Library of Bamberg (*Staatsbibliothek Bamberg*) in Bavaria owes its foundation in 1803 to the necessity of amalgamating the book collections of the secularized monastery and ecclesiastical foundation of the former Bishopric of Bamberg with the library of the University, which had also been dissolved. Since 1965 the Library has been located in the former royal “New Residence” of the bishop with its splendid Baroque rooms. This photo shows the Carlsberg Library occupying the so-called Dominican Shelving. In 1972 Bamberg once more became a university town. – Photo: C. Seelbach





A German national library evolved neither from the Library of the German National Assembly in 1848/49 in St. Paul's Church in Frankfurt (donated by a number of individual publishers) nor from the Parliamentary Library (*Reichstagsbibliothek*) of the German Empire, founded in 1872. This photo shows the Library Hall (*Bibliothekssaal*) in the *Reichstag* Building in Berlin in about 1895 (architect: Paul Wallot). This room and the Library collections were destroyed in the Second World War. – Photo: Picture Archive Prussian Cultural Heritage

ous intellectuals into exile. The confessional public libraries belonging to the churches, which had developed since the second half of the 19th century and were supported by the *Borromäusverein* (BV) and the St. Michael's Association in the Catholic Church, or by the Inner Mission of the Protestant Church, were subjected to even greater repression during the National Socialist period.

city library (*Stadtbibliothek*) and the library for the general public (*Volksbücherei*) to form the so-called “standard library” (*Einheitsbücherei*). There was a public book hall movement to which such cities as Freiburg, Berlin-Charlottenburg, Essen, and Hamburg belonged as the first cities to host public libraries. At the beginning of the 20th century, a counter-movement developed following disagreement on the general direction the movement should be taking. This counter-movement aimed to guide and teach the readers, and involved conducting a readers' advisory interview at the checkout desk instead of allowing free access to the literature as in the *Einheitsbücherei*.

During the Weimar Republic (1919–1933), steps were taken to transfer responsibility for the public libraries to the local communities (*Kommunalisierung der Volksbüchereien*). Since many of the previous funding agencies or societies could no longer afford to support their libraries, the entire sphere of public librarianship—to an even greater extent than that of academic libraries—fell into the hands of the National Socialists after 1933.

The National Socialist government (1933–1945) suppressed the right of free expression, and curtailed freedom not only in literature, art and culture but in all other areas of public life as well. Nothing illustrates the total claim to power of the Nazi Regime more obviously than the book burning in May 1933, the introduction of censorship, and the flight of numer-

The complex housing the Library of the Hansa City of Lübeck (Schleswig-Holstein) – an academic library with integrated public library – is a combination of buildings dating from the Middle Ages and from the 19th and 20th centuries. The Scharbau Hall and the neo-Gothic library hall dating from 1877 and bordering on the former Franciscan monastery, together form the lavish heart of the library, with the hall's architecture based on mediaeval patterns. – Photo: K. Raub, Lübeck



### From Divided to United Germany

Not only did the Second World War (1939–1945) cause enormous damage to library collections and buildings; its long-term consequences also led to the division of Germany and to far-reaching changes in the library landscape. The collections of the Prussian State Library, which had been evacuated during the War, were in

part returned to Berlin, but remained divided and would not be re-united until almost half a century later. In addition to the German Library (*Deutsche Bücherei*) in Leipzig, and again on the initiative of the Association of the German Book Trade, a West German parallel institution was founded at the end of 1946 as the German Library (*Deutsche Bibliothek*) in Frankfurt am Main to serve as the focal point for the acquisition of German literature publications and as the national bibliographic centre of West Germany.

Librarianship in higher education experienced a turbulent upturn in West Germany after the 1960's, furthered primarily by the incipient educational expansion of the time. A wave of new universities was founded in the Federal Republic of Germany, existing universities were extended, new types of higher education institutions (*Gesamthochschule*, *Fachhochschule*) were established and the technical universities expanded and upgraded to full universities. Another result of the expansion and specialisation taking place in science and research could also be seen in the establishment of Central Subject Libraries (*Zentrale Fachbibliotheken*) for the applied



The *Deutsche Bücherei* was jointly founded in 1912 by the city of Leipzig, centre of the book and publishing industry in the German Empire, the Kingdom of Saxony, and the Association of German Booksellers. Both the interior and exterior architecture of the building on the square *Deutscher Platz*, inaugurated in 1916, reflect early Italian Renaissance and Art Nouveau elements. – Photo: Klaus-D. Sonntag



sciences (technology, economics/business, medicine and agriculture), and in the founding of additional special libraries. Further favourable factors were the support for library projects offered by the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*), specifically in the field of cooperative acquisitions within the framework of the Special Subject Fields Collection Plan (*Sondersammelgebietsplan*), the building of new university libraries with large open-access collections arranged in classified order, the development of textbook collections and information centres, the automation of library work-flows and procedures, and the networking of all library functions.

After 1945 public libraries slowly completed the transition from the idea of educating the public through the advisory (*Thekenbücherei*) libraries to libraries with free access to the stacks (*Freihandaufstellung*). In the field of collection development, the previous dominance of *belles-lettres* literature made way for educational and vocational literature, and leisure reading; in addition, more non-fiction and scientific works were acquired, and the collections were rounded out with various forms of multimedia. Special departments were established for target user groups, children and young people being an especially important target group for the public libraries (*Öffentliche Bibliothek* – ÖB). In the large metropolitan cities, literature provision was expanded to form a system consisting of a central library, branch libraries, and mobile libraries.

Public libraries developed new forms of cooperation, although these could not be compared in extent and depth to those already well established in academic librarianship. Cooperation between these two sectors also increased, beginning with interlibrary lending. With the publication of the Library Plan '73 (*Bibliotheksplan '73*), both sectors (academic and public) could at last be perceived as a single unit and efforts to strengthen cooperational ties were slowly intensified.

In the second German State, the German Democratic Republic (GDR, 1949–1990), both the State Library in Berlin and the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig retained their central functions. After the abolition of the federal state structure in 1952, the regional libraries still in existence were redesigned as so-called *general academic libraries* of the regions (*Wissenschaftliche Allgemeinbibliotheken* (WAB) *der Bezirke*); only the Saxonian State Library (*Sächsische Landesbibliothek*) in Dresden retained its former name. The public libraries in the cities and counties were designated *state general libraries* (*Staatliche Allgemeinbibliotheken*). By the time the GDR was dissolved, there were in addition to the libraries of the older universities (Berlin, Greifswald, Halle, Jena, Leipzig, Rostock), over 50 other libraries belonging to institutions of higher education, colleges and engineering schools, many of which had been newly founded during the GDR period.

Scholarly literature in the GDR was for the most part provided by the libraries of the re-

Until renovation work began in 2010 the State and Regional Library in Potsdam, formerly an academic universal library, exuded all the charm of an East German concrete jungle. The main library, which was modernised following German re-unification, reflected the transition from East German interior design to West German library standards for over 20 years. The Education Forum, opened in 2013, is home to the adult education centre and the Research Window (*Forschungsfenster*) exhibition on the Science Floor, showcase for the sciences in Brandenburg. The 16 metre long mural from 1974 behind the former circulation desk was dismantled and remounted at three different points in the new library as a little memento of what had once been East Germany's most modern library. The photo shows the current circulation and front desks. – Photo: MJ Smets, Schulz-Speyer AG.



Following the extensive renovation of the Historical Research Library at the *Unter den Linden* site of the Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage the new General Reading Room, set in a cube of glass, was opened in 2013. The Reading Room has space for 265 desks and 23 carrels, with 290,000 volumes on open access and in the adjoining open stacks. It was opened at the same time as the separate Reading Rooms for historical printed works, manuscripts, maps, music, newspapers, and children's and young people's books. The artwork under the glass roof fashioned from printed aluminium plates with the title "Any Questions?" refers to Bert Brecht's poem "Questions of a reading worker" and to the bronze relief of the same name in the library's fountain court. – Photo: C. Seifert, SBB-PK Berlin

search institutes belonging to the Academy of the Sciences and by the Central Subject Libraries. The GDR government pursued its goal not only of maintaining a professionally-run library in every city, but also of providing each community or district with a public library and establishing a nationwide library network. By the end of the 1980's, over 600 Rural Central Libraries (*ländliche Zentralbibliotheken*) had been established. The importance of these rural libraries in encouraging reading among children and young people as a meaningful leisure pursuit can hardly be over-estimated.

The reunification of Germany in 1990 meant an extensive, deep-seated structural change, if not a new beginning for librarianship, in the five newly created Eastern German States and Berlin, and was not without consequences for librarianship in the Western German States. After being separated for over 40 years, librarianship in West and East Germany once more fused together, best demonstrated in the reunification of both systems' libraries. Libraries at two (or indeed three) locations in Frankfurt am Main, Leipzig and Berlin combined to form the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*), known from 1990 to mid-2006 as the German Library (*Die Deutsche Bibliothek*) and

including the Berlin State Library—Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*) and the Central and Regional Library of Berlin (*Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin*).

After 1990, great efforts were made to compensate for the deficits resulting from the GDR era in both academic and public libraries. These chiefly consisted of improving the physical state of the library buildings, re-uniting separated book collections and purchasing up-to-date technical equipment. Many library buildings were systematically renovated and at the same time partially extended between 1990 and 2007 (the University Library in Leipzig, the main library of the Francke Foundations (*Franckesche Stiftungen*) in Halle, the University and State Library of Halle). Some are still waiting for the completion of essential renovation work (such as the State Library in Berlin, Haus Unter den Linden) or some other solution to their space problems (new building of the University Library of the Humboldt University of Berlin). In many cities completely new library buildings were built, such as the university libraries in Erfurt, Frankfurt an der Oder and Greifswald, the Thuringian University and State Library in Jena, the Saxonian State Library—



State and University Library of Dresden, the university libraries in Cottbus and Weimar, the Library of the University of Applied Sciences in Fürstenwalde and the State Library of Mecklenburg-Vorpommern in Schwerin (*Landesbibliothek Mecklenburg-Vorpommern*). Following the extension of the Duchess Anna Amalia Library (*Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek*) in Weimar, a disastrous fire dealt a cruel blow to the modernization of the historic buildings in 2004. Numerous public libraries, which in GDR times had been housed in inadequate buildings with poor furnishings and equipment, have received new homes in unused, older buildings in the city centres, for instance, the city libraries in Annaberg-Buchholz, Brandenburg, Eisenach, Fürstenwalde, Guben and Schkeuditz.

The political and ideological orientation of East Germany was reflected in its library collections; many could be discarded after reunification. On the other hand, the most important books and journals were not available in many subject areas, and in the area of literary fiction the works of those authors officially considered undesirable in the GDR were conspicuous by their absence. Academic and research libraries received funding from various programmes for supplementing their collections soon after reunification while public libraries were essentially left dependent on the modest resources of their communities.

The main aim was to bring the GDR libraries up to the contemporary technological standard as rapidly as possible, to set up self-service copiers (which had not hitherto been available anywhere in the GDR), to introduce data processing and automate library workflow procedures and book processing. Only then could these libraries contribute to the union catalogues and national cooperative schemes (such as the national union catalogue of periodicals). Integration into the German library system through the inter-library loan network was effected almost immediately after Reunification in 1990, but only later were the libraries able to participate in the German Research Foundation (DFG) special subject fields programme or other projects.

In academic and research librarianship, many libraries were completely redesigned and restructured, sometimes even renamed. In addition to the older universities mentioned

above, new universities were founded or old ones re-chartered, such as in Erfurt, Frankfurt/Oder, Magdeburg and Potsdam. The type of institution known in West Germany as the University of Applied Sciences (*Fachhochschule*) was introduced into the former GDR after 1991. The Academies of the Sciences in Berlin and Leipzig with its libraries and archives was re-constituted. East German Central Libraries were virtually deprived of their function as the parallel institutions in West Germany were disproportionately better-stocked. The same was true of the libraries of many government administrative bodies.

After the dissolution of the general academic libraries, the state libraries were parted from their respective local city libraries and assumed regional functions for the states (*Länder*) reconstituted in the 1990's; in Federal *Länder* without a state library the regional functions fell to the university libraries—a double function which is evident also in their names (such as in Halle/Saxony-Anhalt, Jena/Thuringia). The Saxonian State Library in Dresden was merged with the Library of the Dresden Technical University in 1996 and physically united with it in 2002 in a new building.

As a result of the difficult state of the public finances, the city libraries, abandoned to the care of their local authorities in 1990, entered a crisis much more acute than that of the academic and research libraries. In particular, the smaller libraries in rural areas had to be closed, along with the almost 3,000 libraries of the trade unions (*Betriebsbüchereien*) run by full or part-time staff. However, some compensation was afforded through the introduction of a large number of new mobile libraries in rural areas, for many years funded by central government. A radical programme of staff cuts began in libraries, similar to the one already implemented in government offices and companies. The demand for “another kind” of literature and new media could—at first—only be met with great difficulty. The State Service Centres for Public Libraries (*Staatliche Büchereifachstellen*)—completely unheard of in the GDR—had to be newly established and were mostly created from existing “PAK” Departments of Planning, Guidance and Coordination (*Abteilung Planung, Anleitung, Koordinierung*) within the larger regional and city libraries. In the years that followed these

took on the job of systematically redeveloping public libraries, thus giving new impetus to the task of bringing professional standards into line in all the states of the former West and East Germany. However, many successful projects have been seriously endangered through the dismantling of these service centres by the Ministries of Education and Culture.

The German Library Institute (*Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut – DBI*) in Berlin played an instrumental role in the integration of West and East German librarianship in the first decade after the fall of the Berlin Wall. Founded by law in (West) Berlin in 1978 it underwent expansion in area, staffing and scope following German re-unification. Its objective was to provide national interdisciplinary research facilities and a variety of other services. The Institute, which had been jointly financed by the Federal Government and the states, was dissolved by law in 2000 on the recommendation of the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*) and ceased its activities at the end of 2002. German librarianship thus lost its only central state library infrastructure institution. Some of the DBI's functions, such as the technical maintenance of the national union periodicals database (*Zeitschriftendatenbank*), the compilation of the German Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik*), and the publication of the professional journal

*Bibliotheksdienst* have been continued by other institutions, but other activities have had to be completely terminated.

All attempts to establish a new service centre for libraries have so far failed but the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education and Cultural Affairs (*Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder*) has been induced to commission the non-profit German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband – dbv*) to set up an Library Expertise Network (*Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken – knb*). The knb, an institution funded jointly by the federal states, has been responsible since 2004 for coordinating a number of national activities on a decentralized basis. It supports planning and decision-making processes at state and national level, aims to reinforce the role of libraries in an international context and promotes international relations. In the fall of 2006 the knb inaugurated the “Bibliotheksportal.de”, a library internet portal designed to make available to the general public basic facts and figures on all aspects of the German library system.

### Libraries in the 21st Century

The past two decades have witnessed the continuing vitality of German librarianship. The building of new libraries, or the alteration of those already in existence, has resulted in several new library complexes, some of spectacular architectural design, standing out as new landmarks in the urban landscape and generating an unusual amount of interest among public and specialists alike. The general trend towards digitization has had a strong impact on the library world, as can be seen by the often explosive



2002 marked the completion of the rebuilding of the Bibliotheca Albertina and the return to full functionality of the largest building in the University Library, founded in 1543. The library building, designed by the architect Arwed Rossbach and inaugurated in 1891 now houses almost four million volumes following the renovation work and includes a treasure chamber for the unique world manuscript heritage held by the library, such as the *Codex Sinaiticus*, the *Papyrus Ebers* and the *Leipziger Machsor*. By 2015 the café, lecture theatre and exhibition rooms had also been modernised and an open stack built. The reading area has 900 workspaces, with direct access to 700,000 volumes.  
– Photo: T. Kademann





Although Erfurt University is Germany's youngest university, its roots reach back to the late Middle Ages. When it commenced its academic activities in 1392, it did so as only the third university in what is now the Federal Republic of Germany. It was closed in 1816 and re-established in 1994. In the year 2000, the University and Research Library of Erfurt/Gotha (*Universitäts- und Forschungsbibliothek Erfurt/Gotha*) in Thuringia, responsible for the humanities-based university's literature and information services, moved into a new building in the centre of the future University Campus (architects: Koch, Vogt and Zschomack). Around 700,000 volumes on open access and 240,000 in the stacks are housed in a total area of around 15,000 m<sup>2</sup>, which also provides 540 workspaces for the University's 5,700 students. – Photo: S. Müller-Naumann

increase in the proportion of electronic resources in relation to other library services, with the resulting consequences for library acquisition budgets. It is equally noticeable in the increased energy being invested in the digitization of the cultural heritage, and in the creation of overarching platforms such as the German Digital Library and the Europeana Collections.

Also to be welcomed are attempts to establish a solid legal foundation for libraries at a regional level, even if the library laws passed so far have failed to live up to the expectations of leading librarians. Unfortunately, the national system of supra-regional literature provision suffered a heavy blow when the German Research Foundation decided to discontinue the long-established Special Subject Fields Collection (*Sondersammelgebiete*) programme in favour of the new Specialised Information Services Programme (*Fachinformationsdienste*).

The upheaval within German librarianship is marked by further changes, some still far from

complete. The regional library network system, set up in the 1970s, adapted following German reunification and since largely unchanged, is going through a period of transformation. There are calls for a comprehensive reform of the system, including a reduction in the present number of six networks, and the creation of a national union catalogue. Even though there are no direct advantages for their users, German libraries have recently spent a great deal of effort re-cataloguing their holdings—for the second time in four decades—in accordance with new international cataloguing rules.

The fact that German librarianship has still by no means fully come to terms with its Nazi past is clear from the unremitting efforts being made to locate confiscated works. Following the Washington Declaration (1998) individual libraries had begun to check their holdings for illegally dispossessed library stock but the state has been hesitant to provide appropriate funding for this symbolically significant mission.



In 2015 the University Library in Freiburg (Baden-Württemberg) moved into its second new building after the war (designed by Degelo Architects of Basel), built on the foundations of the old Library dating from 1978. The new building is an architectural landmark; its glass façade reflects the historical building of the University and the city theatre. The four reading rooms can accommodate 1,200 students, with another 500 in the Parlatorium. With its 4.6 million media the Library provides information services not only to the University but also to the whole of the southern Baden area. – Photo: Univ. Library Freiburg/Media Centre

## 2 EDUCATION AND CULTURE

### Germany's Political, Administrative and Organizational Structure

A basic grasp of the political, administrative and organizational structure of Germany, including its school and higher education system, is an essential prerequisite for an understanding of the structure and organization of German librarianship.

The Federal Republic of Germany was founded in May 1949, four years after the end of the Second World War, as a federal state on a democratic and parliamentary basis. Since the reunification of the two German states on October 3, 1990, it has consisted of 16 Federal States or *Länder*: the area states Baden-Württemberg, Bavaria, Brandenburg, Hesse, Mecklenburg-Vorpommern, Lower Saxony, North Rhine-Westphalia, the Rhineland-Palatinate, the Saarland, Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt, Schleswig-Holstein and Thuringia, together with the city-states of Berlin, Bremen and Hamburg. The capital city of Germany is Berlin.

The principles of German constitutional law are laid down in the Basic Law (*Grund-*



The 16 Federal States of the Federal Republic of Germany with their capital cities and coats of arms.

## SOME BASIC FIGURES

(Sources: Central and state Statistical Offices 2016, figures mostly updated to 31/12/2016)

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| Population (as of 12/2016)   | 82.8 m                  |
| Non-Germans  | 8.7 m = 10.6%           |
| Percentage of population with immigrant background                                     | 17.1 m = 20.8%          |
| Area   | 357,375 km <sup>2</sup> |
| Residents per km <sup>2</sup>  | 230                     |
| No. of towns and local authorities   | 11,092                  |
| Gross national income (GNI)  | 3,199.9 bn €            |
| Gross national income per resident (GNIPC)   | 38,786 €                |
| Total number of inhabitants in employment  | 43.76 m                 |
| Total population unemployed (as of 01/2017)  | 2,777 m = 6.3%          |
| Public service employees   | 4.65 m                  |
| Public revenue   |                         |
| (federal, state, local)  | 1,302 tn €              |
| Total public spending on education, science and culture (federal, state, local)        | 123.5 bn €              |
| Total public spending on education, science and culture as % of gross domestic product | 3.99%                   |

*gesetz* – GG). The federal principle allows responsibility for state-level functions to be assigned to the individual states (*Länder*) and their lower-level agencies, allowing greater emphasis to be placed on special regional factors.

The structure of the constitutional organs of the Federal Government and the *Länder* is determined by the classical separation of powers:

- the Federal and State Parliaments (Bundestag, Landtage)
- the President of the Federal Republic, the Federal Government, the governments of the *Länder*
- the Federal Courts and the state courts (*Landesgerichte*).

The parliamentary system of the Federal Republic of Germany makes provision for two representational bodies: The Federal Parliament (*Bundestag*) with 630 directly-elected representatives of the people including overhang and levelling seats, and a second chamber, the Federal Council (*Bundesrat*), with delegates nominated by the state governments of the 16 *Länder*



The *Bundesrat* takes an active part in the legislative decision-making processes affecting the interests of the *Länder*. The Federal Chancellor (*Bundeskanzler*) is responsible for determining basic policy guidelines and for appointing the federal ministers. Head of state is the Federal President (*Bundespräsident*), elected not directly by the people but by the Federal Assembly (*Bundesversammlung*); members of this body include the entire Federal Parliament and a similar number of others, nominated by the state parliaments.

The Basic Law (*Grundgesetz*) specifies a bottom-up structure for state and administration, i.e. from local (*Gemeinde*) to state (*Länder*) to federal (*Bund*) level. The individual states are responsible for regional legislation, whereas laws on all matters of national interest are the prerogative of the Federal Government. The Basic Law (amended in 2006 as a result of the major federalism reform) is supplemented by the Unification Treaty (*Einigungsvertrag*) of August 31, 1990 between the German Democratic Republic (GDR) and the Federal Republic of Germany; this treaty is part of the German constitutional framework and has direct bearing on German librarianship. Administrative duties are primarily the responsibility of the local authorities and the *Länder*. The dispensation of justice is in the hands of the *Länder* or to be more precise of the state courts (*Landesgerichte*). The High Courts are, however, federal institutions. Of these, the highest—the Supreme Court or Federal Constitutional Court (*Bundesverfassungsgericht*)—is based in Karlsruhe. The municipalities, *Länder* and Federal Government all have their own areas of sovereignty; in addition, the *Länder* also have their own constitutions. They draw their income from their statutory share of the total tax revenue.

The responsibility for all cultural affairs, for science and the arts, as well as for schools and education, lies fundamentally with the *Länder*. The cities and communities participate in this “cultural sovereignty” according to the principles of “local cultural autonomy” (*kommunale Kulturautonomie*).

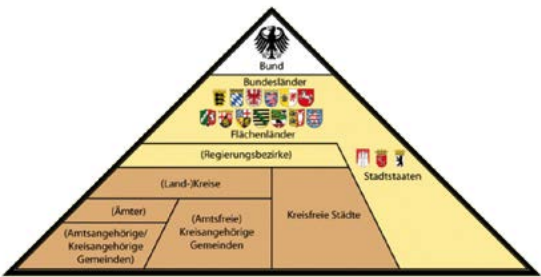
There is no national “library law” in Germany and indeed the German Basic Law currently makes no provision for one. However the states Thuringia (in 2008), Saxony-Anhalt (in 2010)

Hesse (in 2014) and finally Schleswig-Holstein (in 2016) have all already enacted library legislation at federal state level. In North Rhine-Westphalia (NRW) a cultural promotion law also applying to libraries has been in force since 2014. The NRW regional parliament has also approved a first Cultural Promotion Plan (*Kulturförderplan* – KFP) for the period 2016–2018, detailing the objectives of cultural promotion and steps to their realisation and placing the emphasis on support for artists and performers, cultural education, digitization and general culture. One of 11 main areas of activity is the funding of public and academic libraries. In Bavaria the Council of Ministers passed a “Bavarian Library Plan” (*Bayerischer Bibliotheksplan*), a set of recommendations outlining specific target areas, development options and future perspectives for public and academic libraries.

However none of the library legislation passed until now is performance-based, i.e. no laws contain any kind of norms or standards, they merely describe the current state of affairs and emphasis the advisory character of their statements, especially as far as the funding of public libraries by the local and federal state authorities is concerned. However the laws do for the first time define libraries as ‘educational institutions’ and they have updated the legal deposit regulations for the regional libraries.

There is a Federal Ministry of Research (*Bundesforschungsministerium* – BMBF), yet no Federal Ministry of Culture, though in 1998 the Federal Government did combine the remaining central cultural functions and place them under the aegis of a Minister of State, the Federal Commissioner for Culture and Media (*Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien* – BKM). The Commissioner also represents the Federal Government in international cultural affairs.

Following the amendment to the Basic Law, which came into effect on Sept 1 2006 as a result of the federalism reform, the legal responsibility for cultural matters was re-apportioned between the federal and state governments. As a consequence, federal responsibility for cultural affairs was severely curtailed whilst responsibility for educational matters was also drastically reduced. Although responsibility for the lifelong learning project still lies with



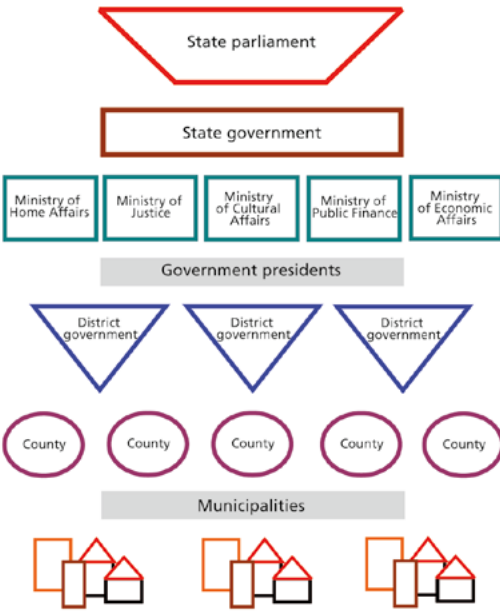
The figure shows the three-tier administrative structure of a German federal state in the form of a pyramid

|  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <b>Bund</b>  | Federal government             |
| <b>Bundesländer</b>                                | Federal states                 |
| <b>Flächenländer</b>                               | Area states                    |
| <b>Stadtstaaten</b>                                | City states                    |
| <b>Regierungsbezirke</b>                           | Administrative districts       |
| <b>(Land-) Kreise</b>                              | Counties                       |
| <b>Ämter</b>                                       | Municipal alliances            |
| <b>(Amtsangehörige/ Kreisangehörige Gemeinden)</b> | Alliance member municipalities |
| <b>(Amtsfreie) Kreisangehörige Gemeinden</b>       | Municipalities                 |
| <b>Kreisfreie Städte</b>                           | Non-country cities             |

the central government, cultural programmes generally no longer receive central funding. The fact that the legislative and administrative processes within the field of cultural policy are largely centralized, coupled with the greatly differing financial capacity of the individual federal states, necessitates not only a certain amount of coordination and cooperation but also a common funding procedure. To help implement these joint activities the states and central government have established a number of institutions, the most important of which are the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG), the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat* – WR) and the Joint Science Conference (*Gemeinsame Wissenschaftskon-*

ferenz von Bund und Ländern – GWK). In order to coordinate important common educational and cultural political activities the federal states have founded the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education and Cultural Affairs (*Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder* – KMK), while in 2005 the Local Government Association for Municipal Administration (*Kommunale Gemeinschaftsstelle für Verwaltungsmanagement* – KGSt) was set up to deal with the management, control and organization of local government administration.

Since some projects in the field of science and research continue to be of national significance, the Federal Government does still have limited influence over so-called Joint Issues (*Gemeinschaftsaufgaben*). These primarily concern higher education building, planning and development, together with the Framework Agreement on Research Funding (*Rahmenvereinbarung Forschungsförderung*) drawn up by the Leibniz Scientific Association (*Wissenschaftsgemeinschaft Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz* – WGL). Some of these federal and state institutions and framework agreements have direct consequences for librarianship: The Federal Ministry for Education and Research



Administrative structure of a Federal State

(BMBF) is responsible for funding the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG) together with a number of database and pilot projects, including the development of digital libraries and the continued promotion of the subject-oriented information centres (*Fachinformationszentren*).

Whilst the federal states regard the changes to the Basic Law in 2006 as a reinforcement of their cultural and educational autonomy, many critics fear that developments will lead to parochial squabbling, significant cutbacks in cultural and educational spending and a diversity of standards at the expense of much-needed harmonization. The Federal Government and area states have agreed to amend the constitution in 2017 in order to allow the Federal Government to invest directly in areas such as local authority schools. This liberalisation of the cooperation regulations comes in answer to demands made by the Federal Government to the area states following the agreement regulating the fiscal transfer (*Finanzausgleich*) between states from 2020 onwards. Whether local authority libraries will benefit in any way from this constitutional amendment remains to be seen and will depend on whether the Federal Ministries adopt a more liberal funding policy.

The legislative process in the individual *Länder* is the task of the state parliaments, which in the area states are called *Landtage*, in the city-states (Hamburg, Bremen, Berlin) the House of Representatives (*Abgeordnetenhaus* or *Bürgerschaft*). The political and administrative government of the *Länder* is the task of the individual state governments (*Landesregierungen*), which are headed by a state prime minister (*Ministerpräsident*) or governing mayor (*Regierender Bürgermeister*). Within the 8 to 10-member cabinet (the *Senat*), the Ministry of Culture (*Kultusministerium*) or Ministry of Science (*Wissenschaftsministerium*) is generally responsible for the public and academic libraries in that state. In the larger *Länder* there are a number of state institutions at intermediate level (district authorities, regional boards, supervisory, structural and approval agencies etc.) with responsibility for particular regional or political issues, e.g. the so-called administrative districts (*Regierungsbezirke*). One of

the main tasks of these authorities is the state supervision of the local authorities (*Kommunalaufsicht*). Most *Länder* have established State Service Centres for Public Libraries (*Staatlichen Büchereistellen*), also called professional centres (*Fachstellen*), advisory centres (*Beratungsstellen*) or library centres (*Büchereizentralen*); for the most part, these operate at administrative district level. In those states which have abolished administrative districts or which operate a centralized funding system, the state library service centres act at state level. In the area states, the counties (*Landkreise*) and the towns with county status (*kreisfreie Städte*) or county towns (*Stadtkreise*) act as lowest-level administrative units, in addition to their main function as local agencies of self-government.

In principle, the towns and local authorities are responsible for all public political functions within their territorial jurisdiction unless otherwise regulated by state or federal law. The concept of self-government includes certain obligatory functions, such as the payment of social welfare assistance or the maintenance of primary and secondary schools, alongside a number of so-called “voluntary” (*freiwillige*) services which each authority can provide as it sees fit without fear of redress. Among these voluntary services is the whole cultural sector including theatres, orchestras, museums and libraries. Political representatives at municipal level, such as the local council (*Gemeinderat*), the city council (*Stadtrat*) or the mayor (*Bürgermeister*) are elected in local elections. Committees are then nominated for particular areas; usually a cultural committee (*Kulturausschuss*) is politically responsible for local libraries in their function as important public service. Local government administration is divided—depending on the size of the community and its organizational structure—into departments (*Dezernate*), subject areas (*Fachbereiche*) and offices (*Ämter*). The local public library may have the status of an independent unit or it may alternatively be subordinate to the local school or cultural department. The same applies to museums, archives, community colleges, and music academies. Many local authorities have begun to hive off some local functions from central administration and convert them into independent business enterpris-

es (*Eigenbetriebe*) on a new commercial basis. Among these are several larger and medium-sized libraries. These independent enterprises are run by a works management and works committee on which the local council is generally represented.

The state is financed at federal, state and local level by various forms of taxation. The local authorities and *Länder* receive a certain percentage of the overall taxation revenue, either as freely disposable or as earmarked income. The local authorities also have the power to set the level of their own local taxes (such as corporation and property taxes and fees), whilst the counties draw their revenue from their member councils. Expenditure on locally and state-funded libraries is covered by the overall state revenue. The allocation of expenditure and income resources is determined on an annual basis by the parliaments and recorded in the state budget plan (*Haushaltsplan*). Plans also exist to reform the financial administrative system in the wake of administrative modernization measures already in progress and expected to lead not only to an increase in service orientation, but also to new organizational structures and enhanced cost transparency within the public sector. To date, nearly all local authorities have transferred their financial auditing system from the old cameralistic basis to modern double-entry bookkeeping and budgetary methods.

## Educational Institutions

### General Schools

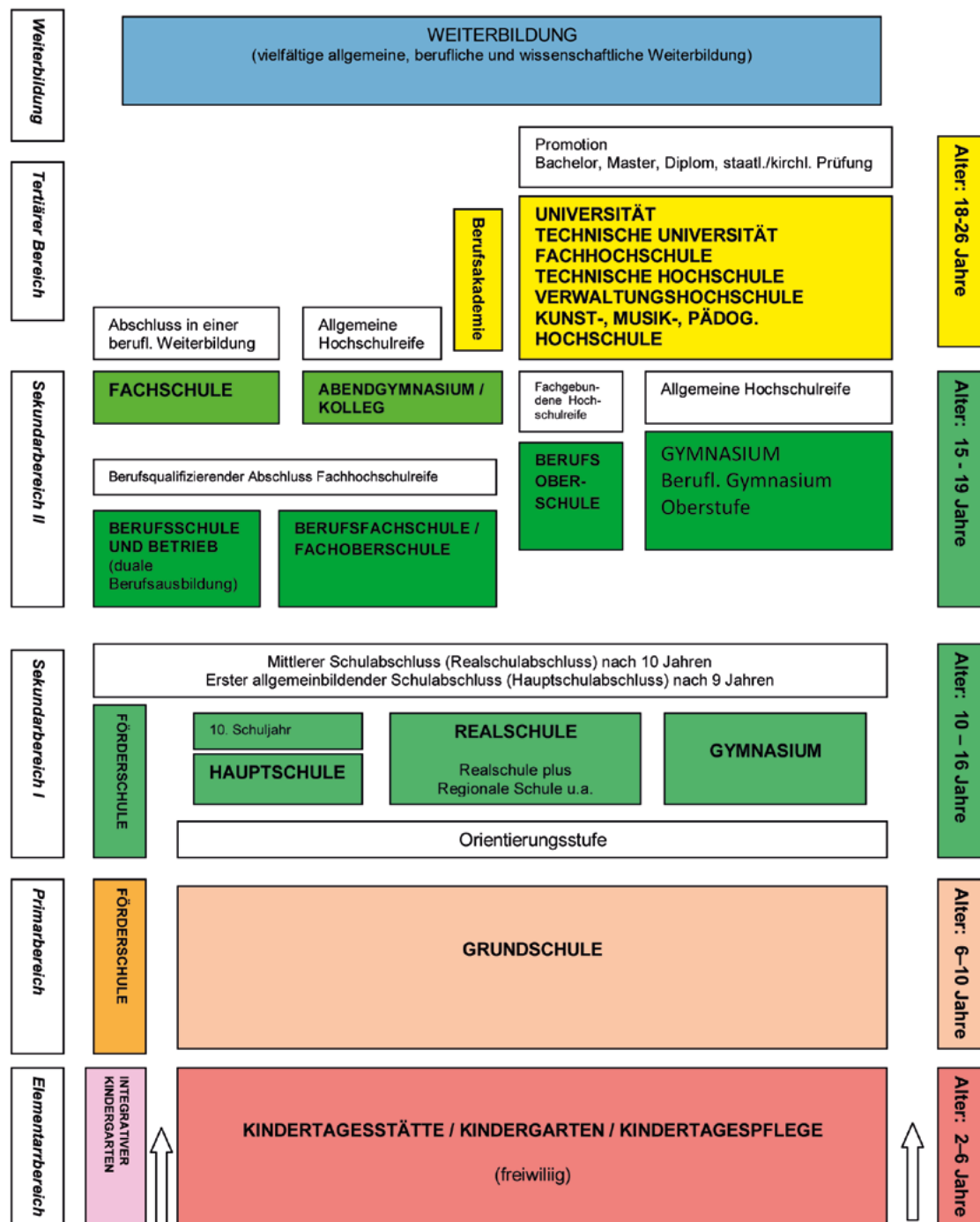
The federal political system has been an important factor in shaping the German educational system. The overwhelming majority of schools and higher education institutions are public institutions. Schools and educational institutions are a statutory element of state educational and cultural politics; with their traditionally strong focus on pedagogical and educational functions they naturally enjoy a higher standing than libraries. The cultural autonomy of the *Länder* grants them exclusive control over legislation governing education and teaching. Most schools are subsidized by local authorities or municipal associations; a growing number are

maintained by the church or are privately run. Whilst the funding body is expected to pay the operating costs (building, furnishings and overhead), the *Länder* are responsible for funding the teaching staff.

The organization of the school system varies from state to state according to the political party currently in power. In order to ensure minimum national standards, the Standing Conference of the Cultural Ministers of the *Länder* (*Ständige Konferenz der Kultusminister der Länder* – KMK) acts as mediator: for instance, the KMK makes recommendations on the minimum number of years children must attend school, on the elements of the curriculum, evaluation of school performance or the reciprocal recognition of examinations and grades. A similarly vital role is played by the Conference of Vice-Chancellors (*Hochschulrektorenkonferenz* – HRK) for institutions of higher education; this body is responsible for questions relating to research and teaching, academic training, knowledge and technology transfer, international cooperation and self-government.

According to the Federal Statistical Office there were 44,300 schools in Germany at the end of 2015 (33,600 general and 8,800 vocational training schools), with a total of around 474,000 classes, approximately 795,000 teachers and 11.0 million pupils. On average, 8.3% of these pupils were non-Germans (=968,500), for the most part immigrants from Turkey, Italy, Serbia, Poland and Albania; the percentage of school children from migration backgrounds was around 24%. In 2015 around 705,000 children started primary school. In 2016 560,000 young people (around 50% of school leavers) opted for vocational training or apprenticeship, 505,000 million young people (around 45.9% of all school leavers) began a degree course at a university. Around 47,000 pupils or 5.6% of all school-leavers (1.11 million) leave school each year without any kind of school-leaving certificate.

State schools are free in all the federal states. School attendance is compulsory for all children from the ages of 6 to 18. After attending elementary school (usually for four years, sometimes six), the pupils transfer to one of several kinds of secondary school: *Hauptschule* (middle



The education system of the Federal Republic of Germany

## THE EDUCATION SYSTEM OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>10. Schuljahr</b>  | 10th schooling year   |
| <b>Abendgymnasium / Kolleg</b>  | Evening (Abendgymnasium) or daytime (Kolleg) secondary school for adults  |
| <b>Abschluss in einer berufl. Weiterbildung</b>   | Vocational formal qualification   |
| <b>Allgemeine Hochschulreife</b>  | University matriculation qualification (all subjects)   |
| <b>Alter</b>  | Age group   |
| <b>Beruf. Gymnasium</b>   | Vocational secondary/high school  |
| <b>Berufsakademie</b>   | Tertiary-level training school combining academic education and practical vocational training                         |
| <b>Berufsfachschule / Fachoberschule (FOS)</b>  | Higher training school leading to a general or subject-limited university matriculation qualification                 |
| <b>Berufsoberschule (BOS)</b>   | Post-vocational higher training school leading to a general or subject-limited university matriculation qualification |
| <b>Berufsqualifizierender Abschluss</b>   | Tertiary-level qualification or degree  |
| <b>Berufsschule und Betrieb</b>   | Vocational school and on-the-job training (dual system of vocational training)  |
| <b>Erster allgemeinbildender Schulabschluss (Hauptschulabschluss) nach 9 Jahren</b>           | School-leaving certificate obtained after 9 years of schooling at a general secondary school                          |
| <b>Fachgebundene Hochschulreife</b>   | University matriculation qualification with subject limitations   |
| <b>Fachhochschule</b>   | University of Applied Sciences  |
| <b>Fachhochschulreife</b>   | University of Applied Sciences matriculation entrance qualification   |
| <b>Fachschule</b>   | Vocational training school (of agriculture, design, technology, economics, health and welfare)                        |
| <b>Förderschule</b>   | Special school for children with learning difficulties  |
| <b>Grundschule</b>  | Primary school  |
| <b>Gymnasium</b>  | Secondary school (UK: Grammar school, US: Preparatory High School)  |
| <b>Hauptschule</b>  | General secondary school  |
| <b>Integrativer Kindergarten</b>  | Integrated nursery school   |
| <b>Kindertagesstätte / Kindergarten / Kindertagespflege</b>                                   | Nursery school/child day-care centre  |
| <b>Kunst-, Musik-, Pädagog. Hochschule</b>  | School of Art, Music, Education   |
| <b>Mittlerer Schulabschluss (Realschulabschluss) nach 10 Jahren</b>                           | Intermediate school-leaving certificate after 10 years of schooling at vocationally-oriented secondary school         |
| <b>Oberstufe</b>  | Sixth form/12th grade (secondary school)  |
| <b>Orientierungsstufe</b>   | Transitional level (following 4th year at school)   |
| <b>Primarbereich</b>  | Primary sector  |
| <b>Promotion</b>  | Doctorate   |
| <b>Bachelor, Master, Diplom, staatl./kirchl. Prüfung</b>                                      | Bachelor, Master, Diploma, state or church examination  |
| <b>Realschule (Realschule plus Regionale Schule u.a.)</b>                                     | Vocationally-oriented secondary school (incl. regional and other similar schools)                                     |
| <b>Sekundarbereich</b>  | Secondary sector  |
| <b>Technische Hochschule</b>  | University of Applied Sciences  |
| <b>Technische Universität</b>   | Technical University  |
| <b>Tertiärer Bereich</b>  | Tertiary sector   |
| <b>Universität</b>  | University  |
| <b>Verwaltungshochschule</b>  | University of Administrative Sciences   |
| <b>Weiterbildung (vielfältige allgemeine, berufliche und wissenschaftliche Weiterbildung)</b> | Further training (all forms of general, professional, vocational and academic training)                               |



school), *Realschule* (secondary school), *Gymnasium* (grammar school, *Gesamtschule* (comprehensive school)). In only a few of the German *Länder* do *Gesamtschulen* exist, combining the various types of secondary school. Pupils who begin a vocational training programme are required to attend a vocational training school (*Berufsschule*). 15 of the 16 federal states now award the standard high school graduation and university entrance qualification, the *Abitur*, after 12 years' (G8—instead of 13) school attendance. Adequately equipped school libraries or media centres exist only in a small number of schools, mostly in *Gymnasien* and *Gesamtschulen*, in total about 18–20 %

### Vocational Training

The Vocational Training Act (*Berufsbildungsgesetz*) is the statutory basis for vocational training in Germany. The most important element and main characteristic of basic vocational training in almost all areas is the so-called “dual system” (*Duales System*), based on the cooperative combination of two diametrically opposed parties—employers and public vocational training establishments. Whilst local authorities provide the funding for vocational training schools and the *Länder* are responsible for the teaching staff and instructional content, the Federal Government is charged with the task of drawing up the overall general requirements. The Chambers of Commerce (*Industrie- und Handelskammern*) and Chambers of Trade (*Handwerkskammern*) are responsible for ensuring that individual employers comply with state standards. The content of the training programmes is discussed and finalized by joint committees consisting of representatives of the employers' associations and the trade unions (for the employees).

Most young people begin their training or apprenticeship on leaving one of the secondary schools. Part of every training course consists in regular attendance at a vocational training school with instruction in practical and theoretical subjects related to the trade in question. The trainee signs a contract requiring the employer to grant him or her the necessary free time to attend vocational school. The training period usually lasts three years. At the end of this time, the trainee must pass an examination

set by an authorized independent institution, usually a Chamber of Commerce or Chamber of Trade. This qualification is recognized within the industrial and economic sector.

### The Public and Private Media Sector

As audio-visual and digital media came to play an increasingly important role in education, the so-called Image and Film Service Units (*Bildstellen*) and Media Centres (*Medienzentren*), which had been established in the 1930s, also took on a new functionality.

In some federal states the nationwide system of state, county and city audio-visual centres (*Landesbildstellen*, *Kreis- und Stadtbildstellen*) has been disbanded. As the provision of media to schools is the remit of the school funding agencies—which usually delegate this duty to the district authorities—the federal states have only a limited influence on the continuing survival of the media centres. In most federal states the system is still in place. In others the work of the centres has been taken over by libraries, school-related authorities and service providers. Tradition media-lending systems have been complemented by web-based distribution models such as SESAM (the Baden-Württemberg portal for educational media), EDMOND-NRW (Media for Schools and Education in North Rhine-Westphalia), or the Siemens media portal.

There are currently (2017) around 600 Media Centres funded by the towns and counties, as well as 15 State Media Centres (*Landesmedienzentren*). Their managers have joined together to create state task forces and their chairmen have formed the national working group BAK Medien. Usually one of the two semi-annual meetings is held in the FWU Institute of Film and Image in Science and Teaching in Munich.

The media centres exist primarily to provide a media service to schools and school libraries, and they make an important contribution to improving the media literacy of both pupils and teachers. These institutions are responsible for the purchase and provision of audio-visual and digital media together with their cataloguing and classification for teaching purposes; they furthermore advise on the use and purchase of audio-visual media (videos, films,

As Regional Library for East Friesland, the County Library of Aurich (*Landschaftsbibliothek Aurich*) in Lower Saxony, founded in 1600, focuses on collecting literature about the region. The extension, built in 1995 and awarded several prizes, has added an open-access area to the closed-access stacks of the 1964 building, which houses 40,000 of the library's 190,000 volumes. In 2007 the library combined its own online catalogue with that of the Johannes-a-Lasco library to form the joint “East Frisian Library”. – Photo: C. Seelbach.



DVDs, Blu-ray discs, educational software, CD-ROMs) and modern AV hardware (video and DVD recorders, digital cameras, film projectors, PCs, mobile internet-enabled end-user devices, e-Book readers) and provide information on media didactics and the impact of modern media. Working together on collaborative photographic and film projects helps children and young people learn skills and proficiencies also useful in daily life or when they later begin work. As partners of the schools, and increasingly also of school libraries and public libraries, the centres are important agents in the development of a critical and creative approach to modern media and internet content.

Taking both sectors of the media market—public and commercial—into account, Germany has one of the most densely-concentrated media landscapes in the world after Japan, Great Britain and Switzerland, with more than 130 German and international television channels available and around 650 printed and online daily newspapers (including German-language editions of foreign newspapers). The number of financially autonomous companies in direct competition is considerably smaller however, since many newspapers are published in a variety of regional editions. The daily newspaper press has a circulation of around 21 million copies each day and in 2016 around 38 million television and radio licences were issued. Two thirds of the print newspapers also offer facsimile or other e-paper editions and sales continue to rise each year. In addition there is an increasing market for newspaper apps designed for mobile end devices; by the end of 2016 users had a choice of over 450 apps.

According to the latest figures for 2016 around 82% of German households own a personal computer with internet access, and this proportion is increasing. Beside the press,

the state-owned and commercial television companies, the cinema and music industry and the entertainment sector including electronic games continue to play an increasingly important social and economic role. The development of the entertainment and media industry will continue to be influenced by digitization of both content itself and its distribution channels. Whilst sales and rental of movies on DVD and Blu-ray disc, together with computer and console games, have stagnated at a high level, there has been a clear increase in the volume of commercial downloading (streaming) of digital audio, image and film data through various internet providers (Amazon Prime Instant Video, Netflix, Maxdome, Sky Ticket, iTunes, VideoBuster etc.). The various media and entertainment sectors—books, films, music, internet and games—have long been interlinked and now influence the daily life and leisure habits of the entire population.

Public and academic libraries have responded to this trend and have for many years constantly been enlarging their holdings of digital media and improving their internet access facilities. However, they have only partly succeeded in keeping pace with the rapid advances both in the technology and range of media products available. The triumphant advance of the Web 2.0 and social networks such as What's App, YouTube, Twitter, Flickr, Pinterest and Facebook along with RSS-feeds, blogs, wikis etc. has continued inexorably, leading to radical changes in the communication and information options available to users almost constantly online. Only a small proportion of libraries have so far made use of the social networks to communicate information and encourage customer loyalty; demands on staff time and data protection concerns have curbed enthusiasm.

## Continuing Professional Education and Training

Continuing professional education and training in Germany has two main goals: first, to enable practitioners to update their existing professional qualifications to the latest technical and organizational standards, and secondly, to allow them to increase the breadth and depth of their professional knowledge. Most professional continuing education is subsidized by commercial enterprise. However, at federal, state and local level, the German state demonstrates its commitment to the continuing professional training of its own employees in the form of its academies, vocational training schools and extensive internal staff training programmes. In addition to the companies and vocational training colleges, there is a whole marketplace of private continuing education providers, for example the technical academies (*Technische Akademien*), the training centres of the various economic sectors (*Bildungswerke der Wirtschaft*) or the professional continuing education centres of the trade unions (*Berufsbildungswerke der Gewerkschaften*). In librarianship alone there are more than 25 state- or privately-owned organisations nationwide offering a comprehensive range of continuing education activities, including among others Library Service Centres (*Bibliotheksfachstellen*), universities, professional associations and library networks).

## Adult Education and Community Colleges

Adult education (*Erwachsenenbildung*) is another important component of the general education system, complementing professional further education. Compared to school education, it is subject to very little state control or supervision. The most important adult education funding bodies are the adult education centres (*Volkshochschulen* – VHS), which have existed in Germany for about 85 years. Although the name *Volkshochschule* contains the German word for university, these centres are not part of the higher education sector but are belong to the quaternary education domain (further education). In 2016 there were 905 adult education centres, funded by local authorities, counties, churches, trade unions, private soci-

eties and charitable organizations. Each local adult education system operates independently, but state associations have been established in all the federal states to deal with mutual problems; they are represented at national level by the German Adult Education Association (*Deutscher Volkshochschulverband*). There are no limits to the course topics offered by the VHS centres, which are open to all: they offer long courses, one-off events, short courses, study excursions or external on-site training. A charge is usually made for the courses. As part of the universally-acclaimed process of *life-long learning*, numerous private and state-supported institutions also offer distance learning courses, with a significant increase in the proportion of internet-based courses over the last three to four years.

Despite some overlapping of common interests there is still considerable room for improvement in cooperation between municipal public libraries and adult education institutions. However the increasing number of places experiencing the positive effects of synergy is promising; occasionally the director of the adult education centre is also head of the library, both institutions sometimes being housed under one roof, often in a new building. This physical integration facilitates the establishment of “self-learning centres” (*Selbstlernzentren*), which have been set up as pilot projects in several cities. Experts and politicians see a bright future in the development of viable new concepts promoting cooperation between the various educational institutions within the municipalities.

## Universities and other Higher Education Institutions

According to the Federal Statistical Office about 2.8 million students—including 12.3% (around 345,000) non-Germans—currently attend the approximately 426 state-run or state-approved universities in Germany (figures from 31/12/2016). Experts reckon that by the year 2018 this number will have increased to over 3.0 million, after which it is expected to decline slightly. Among these institutions for research and teaching number—in addition to 1975 universities—are around six teacher training colleges (*Pädagogische Hochschulen*), 16 theological seminaries

(*Theologische Hochschulen*) and 52 fine arts and music conservatories (*Kunsthochschulen*), together with 215 Universities of Applied Sciences (*Fachhochschulen/Technische Hochschulen*), eight cooperative state universities (*Duale Hochschulen*) and 30 colleges of public administration (*Verwaltungsfachhochschulen*).

They are for the most part state institutions funded by the *Länder*. Alongside the state-approved universities affiliated to the Church, an increasing number of private foundations or companies have launched their own universities offering a specialized range of courses. University lecturers and other staff of the state-run institutions have the status of civil servants or public service employees. The principle of university autonomy (*Hochschulautonomie*) grants institutions of higher education the right to lay down their own internal rules, such as examination regulations. Until the federal reform legislation was passed on Sept 1 2006, amending the Basic Law, the Federal Framework Act Governing Higher Education (*Hochschulrahmengesetz* – HRG) had been in force. Furthermore, research funding, higher education entrance, and repayable state grants for students (BAföG) are regulated by Federal law. The Higher Education Building Financial Assistance Act (*Hochschulbauförderungsgesetz* – HBFG) requires the Federal Government to contribute 50% of the cost of higher education building and initial computer technology and academic literature provision.

The “Excellence” programme for the advancement of scholarship and research at German universities was initiated jointly by the Federal Government and the *Länder* with the dual aims of offering sustainable support to top-level research and strengthening Germany’s position in the competitive international market. The programme is designed to support three areas:

Like many other German cities Regensburg (Bavaria) hosts several universities. The library (photo) of the OTH Regensburg (East Bavarian Technical University), founded in 1971, contains 170,000 volumes and 50,000 licensed e-books and has joined forces with the University of Regensburg, a single-tier library system, to form an online network. Regensburg University Library’s 3.4 million books are organised according to the Regensburg Network Classification (RVK). This system has been widely adopted as a model for open access collections in both newly founded and older libraries. Other successful export products are the Electronic Periodicals Library (EZB) and the Database Infosystem (DBIS). – Photo: MJ Smets, Schulz-Speyer AG

future strategy, graduate schools and clusters of excellence. It was deliberately designed as a competition. Up to ten universities are nominated each year by the German Research Foundation and the German Council of Science and Humanities in recognition of their strategic plans for the future, receiving grants amounting to several million Euros. These universities now regard themselves as “elite universities”.

Following the consecutive nationwide introduction of bachelor and master’s degree courses initiated in 1999 by the Bologna Process, by 2017 nearly all German universities had implemented the process in the majority of disciplines. It is the declared aim of education policy to phase out previous qualifications such as the Diploma, Master’s (*Magister*) and State Examination (*Staatsexamen*), but many institutions are still opposed to these plans and have retained their old academic degree titles.

While universities and institutions of higher education in the United States receive around 1.1% of the gross domestic product in the form of public expenditure and the equivalent of a further 1.2% in the form of private donations, in Germany these figures are approximately 1% and 0.1% respectively. In Sweden and Finland total spending on universities is equivalent to about 1.7% of the gross domestic product. In this respect Germany’s spending on these educational institutions was below the OECD average. The majority of the federal states have abolished the tuition fees introduced across most of the country a few years previously, as they were politically contentious. As a conse-





quence, and to the great regret of some universities and their libraries, special university funding from this source has dried up.

University libraries exist first and foremost to serve the needs of staff and students as information centres but they are to an increasing extent opening their doors to the general public. Libraries of institutions of higher education are fairly closely integrated into the university



The Business and Economics Subject Library (*Wirtschaftswissenschaftliche Zweigbibliothek*) in Ingolstadt (Bavaria) is one of the sub-libraries of the church-funded Roman Catholic University of Eichstätt. It was opened in 1989 in a renovated former seminary of the Steyler Missionaries. A reading room and a five-storey open-access shelving installation (book tower) are housed in the former church nave with choir and gallery. – Photo: C. Seelbach

structures by the legislation of the *Länder* and thus their existence is for the most part on a reasonably firm footing. On the other hand, current developments have called these basic principles into question, such as in those instances in which state higher education building legislation relegates university libraries to the status of a sub-department of the computer centre.

In Germany, the typology of higher education institutions is as follows:

- *Universities, Technical Universities and Comprehensive Universities (Gesamthochschulen)*: The entrance requirement for universities or equivalent institutions of higher education is the general or subject-

specialized baccalaureate (*Hochschulreife*), which is usually attained after 13 years of schooling. A degree course will usually take 6 years to complete in practice, though the official duration for most subjects is four-and-a-half years. The new tuition fees are designed to reduce the time spent at university. The universities with the largest numbers of students are Berlin (three separate universities with a total of 102,500 students), Munich (three universities with 89,300 students), Hagen Distance Teaching University (69,300), Cologne (52,300 students), Münster (43,200 students), Bochum (43,100), Duisburg-Essen (42,200), Hamburg (41,400), Erlangen-Nuremberg (38,900) and Frankfurt am Main (35,400).

- *Universities of Applied Sciences (Fachhochschulen)*: The degree courses at the 215 state-recognized *Fachhochschulen* and (*Technische*) *Hochschulen* in Germany differ from those of the universities in the greater emphasis placed on applied and practice-related aspects. The official course duration is between three and four years, and this is rarely exceeded in practice. On average, 25–28% of all students decide to study at a *Fachhochschule*.
- *Academies or Colleges of Art (Kunsthochschulen)*: A variety of higher education institutions exist for the fine arts, design, music, film and television. Entrance to these degree courses is subject to an appropriate aptitude test.

In some *Länder* other types of higher education institutions exist, such as the teacher training colleges (*Pädagogische Hochschulen (Lehrerbildung)* of Baden Württemberg and the Cooperative State Universities (*Duale Hochschulen*) offering practice-related study courses, sometimes called Vocational Training Academies (*Berufsakademien*).

To summarize, two special features of the German education system stand out in international comparison. Firstly, the federal principle of cultural autonomy (*Kulturhoheit*) allows the *Länder* almost unlimited freedom to develop their own education systems (a freedom further enhanced by the Federalism Reform of 2006). Secondly, employers are required by

Weimar is a centre of extra-mural research. The study centre of the Anna Amalia Library (Thuringia), opened in the winter of 2005, is part of the new Weimar library complex, consisting of several palaces and underground stacks. The book cube constructed in the inner courtyard of the Red Palace houses an open-access collection in classified order (capacity: 200,000 vols.) and forms the modern counterpart of the Rococo Hall in the main building (Green Palace). Following completion of the building work, the library offers ideal working conditions for scholars researching German literary history from the Enlightenment to the Romantic era.

– Photo: U. Schwarz, Klassik Stiftung Weimar

law to shoulder the main burden of practical vocational training.

Education in Germany is characterized by a high degree of institutional flexibility with respect to the educational needs of the individual. Its goals are mobility, transparency and equal opportunity. It is thus quite common for former middle school graduates to go on to attain a university degree after having first gained other vocational qualifications. In the tertiary education sector two institutional types compete with one another, whereby the shorter, practice-related degrees offered by the *Fachhochschulen* or the training courses at the professional academies (*Berufsakademien*) have greater appeal to the professions than the more theoretical courses offered by the universities. The start of the Bologna process and the progressive “academization” of the *Fachhochschulen* has led to the increasing blurring of the distinction between the two systems.

The international PISA studies have highlighted some deficiencies in the German system. Pupils from the lower social strata with poor educational backgrounds or those from immigration backgrounds achieve significantly lower educational and vocational qualifications than in other countries. The efforts made by the federal states since publication of the PISA figures to improve the educational standards in schools have focused on improving reading standards. Many curricular and extra-curricular activities since then have aimed at fostering reading ability and interest in reading among children and young people of all social strata. In some federal states, special programmes have been initiated to empower public libraries, together with the state and church service centres, to develop creative reading projects in cooperation with



nursery and primary schools; examples are the numerous Summer Reading Club activities in the federal states of the “Starting to Read” (*Lesestart*) projects of the BMFB. The Reading Foundation (*Stiftung Lesen*) in Mainz, founded in 1988, is extremely active in promoting reading motivation among children and young people. Under the patronage of the Federal President and with considerable support from the German Booksellers’ and Publishers’ Association (*Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels*) and their partners, from sponsors from the media and cultural sector and from Federal Ministries, the Foundation organizes promotional projects, school campaigns and booksellers’ activities throughout the country. In 2004 the Academy for the Promotion of Reading (*Akademie für Leseförderung*) was established by the Reading Foundation at the Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz Library in Hanover, which organises and funds numerous projects in northern Germany, in order to provide vocational and professional training for disseminators.



## The Book Trade

There is a history of close partnership between libraries and the book trade. In Germany, the book trade can look back on a tradition stretching back into the Middle Ages, a tradition not only of immense cultural importance but also of no mean economic significance. Since books are deemed to be objects of cultural value, they are subject to a reduced rate of value added tax (7%), as in many other countries. However this discount does not apply to e-books, which are subject to the full current value added tax rate of 19%. The book trade comprises the productive publishing sector, wholesale booksellers and retail bookshops. Mail-order online book sales have increased in importance in the wake of the spread of the internet. Amazon, the leading online bookseller in the German-speaking world, attained a turnover of 22 billion dollars in 2015. The large bookseller chains such as Thalia (with around 300 outlets) or the Deutsche Buchhandels GmbH (with around 500 outlets) are squeezing the smaller owner-managed bookshops out of many towns in increasing numbers.

The generally good relationship between booksellers and libraries is not, however, altogether trouble-free.

There are, for example, opposing views on a number of issues such as copyright law and licensing, which have led to legal wrangles. The book trade lost a show court case before the Federal Court of Justice (*Bundesgerichtshof*) regulating access to books from library terminals, especially electronic textbooks. Exorbitant price increases, especially for electronic periodicals, have put an unreasonable strain on library budgets, leading to the forced cancellation of journal subscriptions.

Of the round 2,100 publishers registered for taxation purposes in 2015, together with the 3,800 booksellers and the over 70 intermediate distributors, a high percentage (5,000 companies) belong to the Association of the German Book Trade (*Börsenverein des Deutschen Buch-*

*handels e.V.*). This national association of book publishers and sellers was founded in Leipzig in 1825 and today has its headquarters in Frankfurt am Main. The International Frankfurt Book Fair (*Internationale Frankfurter Buchmesse*), the largest book fair in the world, has been staged there annually since 1949; around 7,100 publishing companies took part in the last fair, at which 276,000 visitors were registered. Every year the renowned Peace Prize of the German Book Trade (*Friedenspreis des Deutschen Buchhandels*) is awarded at the Book Fair. The traditional Spring Book Fair in Leipzig has been able to update its profile and so consolidate its position as leading international exhibition for the book trade and authors alike; in 2015 there were 2,200 exhibitors. The Association of the German Book Trade publishes a professional journal, the *Börsenblatt des Deutschen Buchhandels*, which not only carries advertising for new books, but also contains editorial contributions on the world of publishing. The Association's publishing house also publishes the *German Books in Print* (*Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher – VLB*), a database providing an important source of information for booksellers and libraries on all 1.7 million titles currently in print, including pricing details.

In 2015 the book was ranked a respectable fourteenth out of a list of 51 popular German leisure activities. 19.7% of federal citizens over 14 said they “often” read books in their spare time (2014: 20.4%), a further 28.3% “occasionally” (2014: 29.0%). The place of reading remained unchanged from the previous year, while watching television easily took first place, winning 79% of the votes cast. Although reading is up against stiff competition from the internet, computer games or smartphones when it comes to children's interests, around half of all children are still interested in books.

The media concerns and publishing groups Springer Nature, Random House, Westermann, Klett, Cornelsen, Haufe, Wolters Kluwe, Weka and C.H. Beck and Thieme are ranked the ten largest publishing houses in Germany in 2016, with a total annual turnover of 3.0 billion euros. In 2015 the total turnover of all the publishing houses and bookstores including books and specialist journals amounted to more than 9.2 billion euros.

As in many other countries, resale price maintenance applies to books in Germany, the only product for which this exception is made. The collective guarantee system for the sale of fixed-price publications, which in the past had been organized on the basis of private law and which was essentially voluntary, was replaced in October 2002 by a law requiring retailers to set and publish fixed prices. In 2016 the law was amended to include e-books. Deviations from the fixed price are only allowed in certain cases. One of these is the library discount agreement, which allows a 5% discount for all academic and research libraries open to the public, and 10% for public libraries, including school libraries. Since resale price maintenance has applied to all consumer book sales in Germany since the amendment of the law, it also includes cross-border sales to Germany from other countries.

Resale price maintenance for books guarantees a diversity of titles exceeding that of any other country of the world except Great Britain. Despite the rise of the new media, the production of new titles continued to increase in the past; in 2015 around 89,500 new titles were published, of which 76,500 were first editions. Among these new titles fiction took first place with 18.5%, but children's and young people's literature is also well-represented (11.9%), followed by the other subject areas, such as

literature, business, medicine, law, theology etc.; schoolbooks alone accounted for about 7.0% of all first editions. The greatest number of new books is published in Munich and Berlin, but Stuttgart, Hamburg, Frankfurt am Main and Cologne are also important publishing centres. These cities also have the highest number of bookstores.

The number of translations may be considered an important indicator in determining the cultural flexibility of a country. About 9,400 titles, or around 12.4% of all books published in Germany in 2015, have been translated into German from other languages. Among the original languages English dominates (63.8%), with French (12.0%) and Japanese (6.6%) following a long way behind. A particularly large number of fiction titles are translations but a considerable number of books, together with comics, for children and young people are also translated. That the East is opening up to world trade can be seen by the demand for translation licences for German titles; in 2015 there were more translations into Chinese, followed by Spanish, Italian, Polish, Czech, Korean, French and Russian, than into English.

In many cases the Goethe Institute is willing to fund translation into other languages; this is of especial significance for titles with little chance of commercial success.



Libraries rely mainly on general bookstores to supply them with the latest titles on the German market. As a result of the resale price maintenance applying to books German boasts a close-knit and efficient countrywide network of bookshops. Smaller shops like the one pictured here in Lindau on Lake Constance (Bavaria) can survive alongside branches of the larger bookshop chains by providing customers with expert advice and personal service. They attract new customers by diversifying into products such as craft stationery or by choosing attractive locations in prime tourist areas. – Photo: L. Syré

The International Standard Book Number (ISBN) forges a link between the book trade and libraries and is administered by the Agency for Book Market Standards, a subsidiary of the German Publishers and Booksellers Association. The ISBN is a coded combination of numbers used as a unique identifier for each non-periodical title published by the book trade. Since 2007 this function has been fulfilled by the 13 digit number used mostly in the book trade's inventory management systems but also employed by most libraries for ordering and computer-based cataloguing. The ISBN13 is part of the international Global Trade Item Number (GTIN) classification, formerly the European Article Number (EAN), introduced in 2009. The prefix "978" or "979" indicates publishing products.

E-books have existed alongside print titles for many years. Sales have rocketed, with 27 billion copies sold throughout Germany in 2015. However turnover has not been able to keep up, as average prices for e-books fell in the same period, resulting in a gloomy balance within the book trade. In addition, although the overall market share of e-books relative to print titles may have risen significantly since 2010, it still appears to be stagnating at around 4.5%. Studies on consumer behaviour have shown that e-books are more often purchased by women than men, with elder readers particularly interested in the scalability of the print size. Other aspects such as age, school education, household income, occupation and local community size influence both book sales and usage, and these factors apply equally to electronic and printed editions.

Libraries also offer their readers e-books for loan or on-site use. However not all publishers have agreed to the sale of licences including lending rights; this is a problem particularly for public libraries, while academic libraries criticise the limitations of on-site use.

## Archives

Archives and libraries share many core properties of both their function as guardians of the collective memory and their basic activities such as collection, cataloguing, indexing, preservation and usage. But whereas libraries make available published information produced

expressly for the purpose of dissemination to third parties, archival holdings consist of evidence and other remains of administrative procedures, business transactions or general dealings between persons. Once the documents—usually unique items—have been incorporated into the archive they experience a change of function: they become historical source documents.

Provenance is the governing principle of archival work. Since it also lies at the heart of the arrangement, indexing and eventually the usage of the archival holdings, it is also a record of the origins and development of the archive itself. The principle of provenance dictates not only the classification system employed in each individual archive but the structure of the entire archival system.

The archive and library sectors are both characterised by a similar variety of funding agencies and types of institution. In addition to those belonging to the Federal Government, federal states and local authorities, archives are also maintained by churches, businesses, organisations, associations, clubs and private persons. The Index of Archives in Germany, Austria and Switzerland (*Verzeichnis Archive in Deutschland, Österreich und der Schweiz*) lists the addresses of all archives and their archivists. Since the 23rd edition in 2015/16 a database of the book edition has also been available online.

Of especial significance among the state-maintained archives are the State and Regional Archives, particularly the Federal Archives (*Bundesarchiv*) in Koblenz, with branches in other locations. At a local level the city and local council archives form the largest group, though some federal states also maintain district archives. Whereas the Protestant Church sustains archives at central and federal state level, the Catholic Church supports bishopric, diocesan and cathedral archives; in addition religious orders and monasteries have their own archives.

In the commercial sector the archives of individual enterprises should be mentioned in addition to the archives of the chambers of commerce and trade associations. In the political sector there are the collections of parliaments, political parties and associations.

Among the media archives can be numbered the archival holdings of the broadcasting companies and in particular the press and image archives created by the newspaper publishers. The universities and similar institutions of higher education also document their own history in their archives, as do many other academic and cultural institutions. Finally, the family and private archives of the ruling houses, usually in the hands of the nobility, should not be overlooked.

The archives see themselves as modern service providers. They provide reading rooms for the use of their collections, offer technical resources and reproduction services, and make their information tools available online. In addition to creating holdings listings and finding aids, they are increasingly digitizing selected works. Many archives also deliver their data to the German Digital Library, and the gateway *Archivportal-D* has been created to provide targeted access to this material.

Since most archives are unique in character, the preservation of their collections is one of our top priorities. A still greater challenge is the way in which administrative and communicative procedures are constantly changing, or have already changed, as a result of the digital era (paperless office). Today an increasing proportion of the source materials of the future appears not in print but in electronic form. Electronic files and data are also subject to legal deposit regulations, with the same ruling regarding form and content applying as to conventional printed material. Archives are facing the same problem of long-term archiving already familiar to libraries. The requirements of a long-term electronic archive have been defined but not yet implemented. The accession, digital storage and usage of archival holdings is regulated by law, with the regional archive legislation of the federal states playing an particularly important role alongside the Federal Archive Law (*Bundesarchivgesetz*), further complemented by additional statutory provisions and fee scales. Of particular practical significance are the legal blocking periods (usually 30 years) governing archive materials. A new Federal Archive Law is planned for 2017 and is expected to reduce certain blocking periods to ten years.

Archives are not only focal points of historical research; they can also be seen as



Archives perceive themselves increasingly as service providers for both research and society at large and make sure they provide their users with the necessary infrastructure: new or modernised reading rooms with Wi-Fi and laptop connections, well-stocked collections of finding aids, electronically-indexed archival holdings, digital and analogue reproductions, well-maintained online information systems and internet portals, internet search and pre-ordering services for archive materials. This kind of service naturally presupposes the digitisation and online availability of the necessary finding aids, something archives in general, including the one shown here, the General Regional Archive BW in Karlsruhe, are making great efforts to achieve.

– Photo: GLA Karlsruhe

disseminators of historical subject content, focusing their activities on publications, lecture series and exhibitions. Archival staff are represented by the Association of German Archivists (*Verband deutscher Archivarinnen und Archivare e.V. – VdA*) and the Association of German Business Archivists (*Vereinigung deutscher Wirtschaftsarchivare e.V.*), with their various specialist groups, state-level associations and working groups. The VdA is the body responsible for publishing the journal *Archivar. Zeitschrift für Archivwesen* (The Archivist. Journal of Archive Studies), with a circulation of 3,600. As the University of Applied Studies for Archival Science, the Archive School Marburg plays a prominent role in archival training, with the exception of the qualification Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellter für Medien- und Informationsdienste – FAMI*) with the special subject option Archives. The University of Applied Sciences in Potsdam also offers bachelor and master's courses in archival science.



## 3 LIBRARY DIVERSITY

### The Multifaceted Picture of Libraries in Germany

#### The Many Different Types of Funding Institutions

The sheer diversity of German libraries has left its special mark on the librarianship of this country. Not infrequently, particular types of library have their roots in a specific historical era and are thus closely bound up with the cultural and intellectual development of Germany and its territories. They can usually be assigned to one particular kind of funding institution. It would therefore be a good idea to take a look at the range of these institutions and to start by naming the three most important ones: the *public*, the *church* and the *private* funding institutions.

#### Public Funding Institutions The Federal Government

The German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*), for which the Federal Commissioner for Culture and Media (*Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien* – BKM) is responsible, is foremost among the libraries funded by the Federal Government. Other notable libraries are the Library of the German Parliament (*Bibliothek des Deutschen Bundestages*), with 1.5 million volumes one of the largest parliamentary libraries in the world, the libraries of the Federal Ministries and administrative authorities, the libraries of the Federal Courts and of the Federal research institutions. The Ministry of Defence is responsible for the two Universities of the German Armed Forces in Hamburg and Neubiberg (near Munich), the Information Centre of the German Armed Forces (*Zentrum Informationsarbeit Bundeswehr*) in Strausberg and 60 further libraries.

Since responsibility for science, education, culture and art is almost exclusively the preserve of the *Länder*, as explained above, the Federal Government acts as library funding agency in only a few isolated cases.

For instance, the Federal Government contributes to the funding of individual libraries and

institutions of national importance. The more than 80 non-university research institutions united in the Scientific Association Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (*Wissenschaftsgemeinschaft Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz e.V.*) are jointly funded by the Federal Government and the *Länder* and have their own subject-based special libraries. Other institutions of the scientific and research infrastructure, which as a result are also members of the Leibniz Society, include the Central Subject Libraries for Medicine, Technology, and Business and Economics. A funding mix—Federal Government, private foundations and the individual *Länder*—is evidenced in the large research institutions such as the Max Planck Society (*Max-Planck-Gesellschaft*), the Fraunhofer Society (*Fraunhofer-Gesellschaft*) or the Hermann von Helmholtz Association of German Research Centres (*Helmholtz-Gemeinschaft Deutscher Forschungszentren*), which also maintain important special libraries.

#### The Federal States (Länder)

Because of the guaranteed principle of cultural and educational autonomy (*Kulturhoheit*) of the federal states regarding decision-making in all scientific, educational and social issues, the *Länder* are the leading German funding agencies in the academic and research library sector. This means that the Federal States are responsible not only for almost all institutions of higher education including university libraries but also for the libraries of the state parliaments, the state authorities and state research institutions, the state archives and the museums.

#### The Municipalities

The most important funding agencies for public libraries are the cities and the local authorities which may, and indeed do, make use of their legal right to local self-government in order to maintain city or community libraries. In some Federal States the counties also maintain their own mobile, central county or supplementary county libraries, or cooperate with local municipalities and the state in the joint funding of a central library. In some cases they provide funding to the local municipalities for the upkeep of their town and community libraries.

#### Public Foundations

Public foundations are often responsible for the funding of notable libraries. Foremost among these are the Foundation of the Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Stiftung Preußischer Kulturbesitz*), with the Berlin State Library (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin*) and the Classic Foundation of Weimar (*Klassik Stiftung Weimar*) with the Duchess Anna Amalia Library (*Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek*) in Weimar. Further such public law foundations maintaining their own libraries, and therefore dependent on the financial subsidies of the regional authorities, are the Francke Foundations (*Franckesche Stiftungen*) with their Main Library in Halle on the Saale River, the Foundation of the Germanic National Museum (*Stiftung Germanisches Nationalmuseum*) in Nuremberg with its outstanding special library, and the Foundation of the Central and State Library Berlin (*Stiftung Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin*), under whose auspices the Berlin City Library (*Stadtbibliothek*), the American



Like the Protestant Church, the Catholic Church too maintains a large number of academic libraries benefiting study, teaching and research at universities and church educational institutions. The Library of the Episcopal Seminary in Trier (Rhineland-Palatinate) serves as university library to the theological faculty of the University of Trier; as diocesan library it collects and indexes literature and information on the past and present history of the Diocese of Trier. It is also responsible for managing the historical holdings of the region's parish and monastery libraries. In 2016 the training of the aspirants was transferred to Frankfurt-St. Georgen. – Photo: Episcopal Seminary Trier

Memorial Library (*Amerika-Gedenk-Bibliothek – AGB*) the Senate Library (*Senatsbibliothek*) and the German Central Library of Economics (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften – Leibniz-Informationszentrum Wirtschaft – ZWB*) are united.

#### Church Funding

Both the Catholic and the Protestant Churches own a large number of libraries. The cathedral, diocesan, and state church libraries belong to the species *scholarly special libraries*, along with the libraries of the seminaries and other religious institutions and associations. In addition, the libraries of non-secular institutions of higher education such as that of the Catholic University of Eichstätt (*Katholische Universität Eichstätt*) form an integral part of the academic and research library system. Most of these libraries are members of the Working Group of Catholic and Theological Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft katholisch-theologischer Bibliotheken – AkthB*) and the Association of Ecclesiastical Academic Libraries. Since 2000 these two groups, together with the Working Association of Archives and Libraries within the Evangelical Church of Germany (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Archive und Bibliotheken der evangelischen Kirche – AABevK*), have been responsible for publishing the respected “Yearbook of church books and libraries” (*Jahrbuch kirchliches Buch- und Bibliothekswesen*).

The diocesan libraries provide a regional literature service to their respective diocese; not only do they serve the full and part-time church staff, scholars, trainees and students, they are also open to the public. The libraries of the monastic orders and monasteries have developed in different directions according to the history, aims and profile of the order, ranging from large theological and philosophical libraries such as in the Benedictine abbeys at Maria Laach and Beuron to smaller special libraries holding mainly publications relating to the order, and other libraries meeting daily theological needs. Holdings encompass not only current theological and philosophical literature and material pertaining to related disciplines but also varied collections of manuscripts, incunabula and rare printed books. The churches maintain small *public libraries*, mostly run by volunteers, at parish





The Court Library of the Prince of Thurn and Taxis (*Fürst Thurn und Taxis Hofbibliothek*) is classed as a private library and is a scholarly general library with 245,000 volumes, 3,350 manuscripts and 1,300 incunabula and early imprints which were made available to the public as early as 1782. The baroque domed hall, built in 1732 and named after its artist Cosmas Damian Asam, houses the Library's older collections. – Foto: L.W. Splitta, Prince of Thurn and Taxis Central Archives

The Many Different Types of Library

The individual types of libraries can be classified not only by their funding institutions—public or private—but also by many other factors, such as historical development, collection size and structure, or the kind of user they serve. Another important criterion is the range of their objectives and functions. In reality, there is a good deal of overlapping, especially in libraries which have by definition a dual function, such as combined city and state libraries (*Stadt- und Landesbibliothek*). For the purposes of the following typology, we will therefore focus on each library’s primary function.

The Great National Libraries

Alongside the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) there are a number of other outstanding large libraries with a crucial role in the library system at national level.

| Name of Library  | Holdings | Circulation<br>(in ME) | Spending on<br>acquisitions<br>and binding<br>(Euro) | Active<br>users | Hours open<br>per week | Inter-library<br>loans and<br>document<br>delivery |
|--|----------|------------------------|--|-----------------|------------------------|--|
| German Nat. Library Frankfurt am Main and Leipzig              | 19.5 m   | 0.52 m                 | n/a  | 21,786          | 73                     | 4,672  |
| State Library Berlin   | 11.5 m   | 1.27 m                 | 9.96 m   | 33,289          | 69                     | 62,269   |
| Bavarian State Library Munich                                  | 10.5 m   | 1.46 m                 | 12.19 m  | 69,455          | 112                    | 294,761  |
| TIB Hanover  | 3.08 m   | 0                      | 12.67 m  | 27,504          | 84                     | 183,198  |
| National Library of Medicine (ZBMED) in Cologne and Bonn       | 1.6 m    | 0.089 m                | n/a  | n/a             | 73                     | 131,729  |
| German National Library of Economics (ZBW) in Kiel and Hamburg | 4.4 m    | 0.26 m                 | n/a  | 12,584          | 55                     | 45,331   |

General statistics 2015: National general and special subject libraries (Source German Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik*)), updated to 31/12/2015



The German National Library (Deutsche Nationalbibliothek)

Unlike many other countries, Germany had no national library for a long period of time due to territorial fragmentation and internal political polarities.

The *Deutsche Bücherei*, founded by the Association of the German Book Trade with the financial support of the city of Leipzig and the Kingdom of Saxony in 1912, was no longer able to fulfil the function of national library and national bibliographical centre for the Allied zones after the division of Germany in 1945. On the initiative of publishers and librarians *Die*

The new building of the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) in Frankfurt am Main in Hesse (architects: Arat, Kaiser, Kaiser) took only six years to build and was inaugurated in 1998. It has a usable area of 77,000 m² and provides space to house 18 million publications, which means that the capacity will not be exhausted until 2035, if the expected daily intake of 1,000 titles is maintained. A 3,200 m² reading room with 350 workspaces and a reference library of 100,000 volumes are available to library users. – Photo: S. Jockel, DNB

*Deutsche Bibliothek* was therefore established in Frankfurt am Main in 1946. Both institutions were merged following reunification in 1990 and renamed *Die Deutsche Bibliothek* (DDB). In 2006 a law was passed changing the name to the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek* – DNB). The DNB manages its broad national remit from its two locations in Frankfurt am Main and Leipzig.

With approximately 32.6 million media units, the German National Library is by far the largest library in Germany. The German Music Archive (*Deutsches Musikarchiv* – DMA), founded in 1970 in Berlin and moved in 2010 to new accommodation in the DNB’s fourth extension in Leipzig, is the largest German music library, housing 994,000 items of printed music and over 1.7 million sound recordings, and hosting the Bonn Catalogue, an index of publisher-protected musical performance materials. Among its objectives as defined by the “German National Library Act” (*Gesetz über die Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*), which came into force on June 29 2006, are the acquisition, processing, bibliographical indexing, long-term archiving and making available to the public of

- works published in Germany after 1913 and
- German-language works published in other countries after 1913 including translations of German-language works into other languages and foreign language works about Germany.

In addition the Library is required to take responsibility for the provision of central library services and a national bibliography. The term “works” includes all print, image or sound publications, whether these are made available to the public in physical or non-physical form.

Legal deposit legislation states that a copy of every work produced by commercial or non-commercial publishers in Germany shall be sent to the German National Library free of charge and without further demand. This includes not only conventional printed materials but also microforms, recordings, works on physical data-storage media and network publications such as e-books, e-journals, e-papers and university theses in digital form. The DNB also archives websites. The Collection Guidelines explain and further define the legal details of the statutory collection mandate.

This unequivocal mandate confers upon the German National Library the function of general library for works published in the Ger-

man-speaking world from 1913 onwards, i.e. it is responsible for collecting and cataloguing materials from all subject areas. In its function as national archive, the German National Library does not lend these holdings, but they are available for reference consultation.

The German National Library is not only the central German archive library and the central music archive, but also the national bibliographic centre. Its database holds details of every work published in Germany. The various sections of the German National Bibliography (*Deutsche Nationalbibliografie*) have been available as an online journal in Portable Document Format (PDF) since 2010 and are integrated into the free search functions in the catalogue of the German National Library. Alongside this free online database there is also a national bibliographical service serving customers who in addition to the use of the online catalogue also need the enhanced selection facilities required to retrieve new or updated records at regular intervals..

Metadata from the German National Bibliography are subject to “Creative Commons Zero” conditions (CC01.1) and are marketed through various channels via the online catalogue, various interfaces and data transfer via the FTP/WWW server. They are available in the formats MARC 21, a number of RDF serializations, CSV and DNB Casual (oai dc). The print edition of the German National Bibliography ceased publication at the end of 2009 after nearly one hundred years. In cooperation with the Book Trade Marketing and Publisher Service (*Marketing- und Verlagsservice des Buchhandels GmbH – MVB*), operated by the German Publishers and Booksellers Association (*Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels*), which is in turn responsible for the production of German Books in Print (*Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher – VLB*) on DVD and online, the German National Library has published its new title information service *Neuerscheinungsdienst* since 2003. The DNB also offers catalogue enrichment as a TOC service, with title data incorporating persistent links to digitized, searchable table of contents information in Portable Document Format (PDF).

The German National Library devotes special attention to the publications of German-language authors in emigration and exile during

the years of the National Socialist regime from 1933–1945. The Collection of Exile Literature (*Sammlung Exil-Literatur*) of the *Deutsche Bücherei* in Leipzig and the German Exile Archive (*Deutsches Exilarchiv*) of the German National Library in Frankfurt am Main contain published books, brochures, and journals of German emigrants abroad, as well as the personal records of individual emigrants and the archives of exile organizations. The German Exile Archive hosts exhibitions and events to help make its material on the exile of Germans under the Nazi regime known to a wider public. The Anne Frank Shoah Library in Leipzig is committed to collecting literature on the holocaust and the persecution of Jews under National Socialism.

The German Book and Writing Museum (*Das Deutsche Buch- und Schriftmuseum*) at the DNB in Leipzig is a documentation centre for the history and culture of the book. At a time when audio-visual and electronic media are increasingly competing with the book, it is becoming more important than ever to preserve valuable examples of the culture of the printed word. Founded in 1884, making it the oldest book museum in the world, the Museum makes its extensive and valuable holdings, including the largest collection of watermarked papers in the world, available to a wide audience via both special exhibitions and its permanent exhibition “Signs—Books—Networks. From cuneiform to binary code”.

The German National Library cooperates with national and international library institutions to participate in numerous projects. Examples of these are: the compilation of common rules, standards and norms, the cooperative maintenance of authority file databases, the development of strategies and techniques for mass deacidification, the definition of a metadata standard for indexing digital and digitized resources, the administration of the national ISSN centre for Germany, and the establishment of the German Digital Library and the European collections.

The book preservation policy of the DNB complies with recognised international standards, its goal being to prevent, or at least minimise, possible damage and degradation to its media holdings. The main focus is therefore on preventative and mass conservation measures. These include packing materials

suitable for archival use, stock editing, mass de-acidification and conservation procedures related to information security. In addition the Conservation Department applies preservation processes systematically to particular sections throughout the Library. Another important area is quality management, ensuring that all procedures conform to the required standard.

### ***The State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage (Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin—Preußischer Kulturbesitz)***

The State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preussischer Kulturbesitz* – SBB-PK) ranks alongside the Bavarian State Library as the most important academic research and information library in Germany. It forms part of the Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation (*Stiftung Preussischer Kulturbesitz*), responsible for the preservation, curation and further collection of the cultural heritage of the former Prussian territory and one of the largest cultural institutions in the world. 75% of its funding is provided by the Federal Government, the remaining 25% coming from the German federal states. The library continues the tradition of the former Royal Library of Berlin (*Königliche Bibliothek*), founded in 1661, which was later to become the Prussian State Library (*Preussische Staatsbibliothek*). Despite suffering heavy damage in the Second World War the State Library is now one of the largest and most important general academic libraries in Europe.

In the aftermath of the war, post-war Germany found itself with two State Libraries, both located in Berlin. Following German reunification the two locations in the East and West of the city were merged in 1992 to form the State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preussischer Kulturbesitz*), a “library with two homes” under the auspices of the public Prussian Cultural Heritage Foundation.

For each of the two locations a subject focus concept was developed which took into account the existing holdings and which has recently been reviewed. Over a number of years the Unter den Linden building has been completely renovated, with the addition of a



The German Music Archiv (*Deutsches Musikarchiv* – DMA) in Berlin was founded in 1970 and is part of the German National Library in Frankfurt am Main. It is not only the central repository for printed music and recordings but also the German information centre for the bibliography of music. In 2010 the DMA left the Herrenhaus Correns (“Siemens Villa”) in Berlin-Lankwitz, which had been its home since 1978, to join the DNB at its location in Leipzig. Its current holdings number around 1 million media, housed in the extension building completed in 2011 and including a new reading room and sound studio. – Photo: Kunstmann, DNB





In 1978, 33 years after the end of the Second World War, the State Library Prussian Cultural Heritage was finally able to unite its collections and move into a new building on Potsdamer Platz in Berlin-Tiergarten (architect: Hans Scharoun). The Potsdamer Platz building of the State Library of Berlin – Prussian Cultural Heritage (*Staatsbibliothek zu Berlin – Preußischer Kulturbesitz*) functions as a lending and study library combined with an information centre; it houses the special regional collections relating to Eastern Europe, the Middle and the Far East. – Photo: C. Seelbach

central Reading Room, opened in 2013, and a Reading Room for Early Printed Books. This location functions as a historical research library, dedicated to the collection of literature from all periods up to the turn of the 19th and 20th centuries. In addition to the historical printed works, the special materials collections of manuscripts, music, maps and books for children and young people are also centred here. The location also houses a modern restoration workshop and a digitization centre. The building at Potsdamer Street is being remodelled as a contemporary literature research library and will contain modern and current literature alongside a general reference collection covering all periods. It is furthermore home to the special regional collections relating to Eastern Europe, the Middle and the Far East.

The State Library of Berlin's holdings encompass over 11.4 million books, periodicals and serial works, over 250,000 rare books and 4,600 early printed works, 1.8 million specialist printed works in the special collections, 1,600 literary estates and archives, just under 60,000 manuscripts, over 320,000 autograph texts and around 2.7 million microforms. Subscriptions are held to 360 newspapers from all over the world and just under 27,000 international printed periodicals. Electronic resources include 5,000 databases and nearly 30,000 electronic journals. The continual expansion of the library holdings made an additional repository imperative and this was duly opened in 2014 with space for six million volumes.

Within the national system of literature and information provision, the State Library has a variety of functions. Under the new Specialised

Information Services (*Fachinformationsdienste*) programme financed by the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG), it is responsible for servicing the two FID services CrossAsia—Specialised Information Service Asia, and the Special Information Service for International and Interdisciplinary Legal Research. Under the cooperative acquisitions programme Collection of German Imprints (*Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*), the State Library is responsible for acquiring all printed works published between 1871–1912 (maps between 1801–1912, music between 1801–1945). The affiliated bpk Picture Agency administers the photographic collections and the estates of numerous photographers and holds over 12 million pictures.

The Library partially continues in the tradition of the former Prussian National Library in its provision of bibliographical services. It houses the editorial board of the national Periodicals Database (*Zeitschriftendatenbank*), listing 1.8 million newspapers and periodicals and including details of more than 15.6 million locations for these titles in around 3,700 German libraries. In the area of manuscripts and early printed books the State Library is responsible for the national autograph and literary legacy database Kalliope as well as for the Union Catalogue of Incunabula (*Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke*), which has been available in printed (and now electronic) form for over 100 years and lists books printed before 1500.

Formerly responsible for allocating German library identifiers, the Library Codes Agency (*Siegelstelle*) at the State Library now assigns international codes to libraries, archives,

museums and related institution. The German designations have been superseded by ISIL (International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations) codes, based on an ISO standard.

### ***The Bavarian State Library in Munich (Bayerische Staatsbibliothek)***

With around 10.5 million volumes of national and international literature, the Bavarian State Library (*Bayerische Staatsbibliothek* – BSB) in Munich is the second largest scholarly general library in the Federal Republic of Germany and owns one of the most significant collections of primary sources in the world. At the same time, it is the regional state library (*Landesbibliothek*) of the Free State of Bavaria and the state service centre for public libraries in all aspects of Bavarian librarianship; since 1663 it has collected the legal deposit copies of all works published in Bavaria. Its more than 59,000 journals and newspaper subscriptions make it the largest periodicals library in Europe after the British Library.

Founded in 1558 as the ducal court library of the House of Wittelsbach, the library adopted its present name, the Bavarian State Library,

in 1919. It collects publications of all countries and subject areas. Special areas of focus include Bavaria, antiquity and the classics, history, music, Eastern and South-eastern Europe, and the Orient and Far East. Its tradition and history lead it to place special emphasis on the collection of manuscripts and imprints published before 1700, together with literature of the post-World War II era in non-German languages.

With just under 133,000 manuscripts, the manuscript collection is the largest in the world. Equally outstanding is the collection of early imprints numbering 20,000 volumes. Since the Bavarian State Library is foremost in the collection of 16th and 17th century German-language imprints, it has also taken on a leading role in the corresponding national bibliographic cataloguing projects and in the production of the Collection of German Imprints (*Sammlung*

The Bavarian State Library (*Bayerische Staatsbibliothek* – BSB) in Munich was first granted a building of its own in 1843, planned by Friedrich von Gärtner. It was considered the best German library building of its time, combining functional and representational aspects, the latter in the form of its monumental interior staircase. Limited stack area has forced the BSB, along with many other German libraries, to house a large proportion of its holdings offsite. – Photo: H.-R. Schulz, BSB Munich



*Deutscher Drucke*) for the period from 1450 to 1600, music imprints up to 1800. For many years the Bavarian State Library was a mainstay of the Special Subject Fields programme of the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*) and it is now represented in the current Special Information Services programme by the subject areas classics, the historical sciences, music and the areas studies of Eastern, Eastern Central and South-East Europe. It hosts the three Virtual Subject Libraries Romance Culture, Eastern Europe and Musicology as well as several portals, including *bavarikon*—Cultural Treasures of Bavaria, and the gateway *Literaturportal Bayern*.

In similar manner to the Berlin State Library, the Bavarian State Library in Munich also participates in numerous national and international cooperative projects, maintaining partnerships with international associations and foreign libraries. Based on the attitude that the heritage of the past is closely linked to the printed book, but that although the book will continue to play a leading role in the future, the new electronic media will open up totally new vistas, the Library has directed its efforts both towards the preservation of its older collections and the promotion of modern technology. The Bavarian State Library thus houses both the Institute for Book and Manuscript Restoration (*Institut für Buch- und Handschriftenrestaurierung*) and the Munich Digitization Centre (*Münchener Digitalisierungszentrum* – MDZ). With over 1.2 million digitized works the Library's digital holdings are the largest in Germany and are complemented by a whole spectrum of innovative services relating to digital usage patterns. The Library sees itself as a repository of printed cultural assets, as multimedia service provider to teaching and research, and as innovation hub for digital information technology and services.

### The Central Subject Libraries

The three Central Subject Libraries (*Zentrale Fachbibliotheken*) in Hanover, Cologne and Kiel are responsible for national literature provision in the applied sciences. Their objective is to ensure that the collections in their respective subject areas are as broadly based and com-



The German National Library of Medicine in Cologne and Bonn (North Rhine-Westphalia), with predecessors going back to the year 1908, is the largest medical special library in Europe. Its holdings were formerly scattered over several floors of a clinic building but in 1999 it moved into its own new purpose-built premises in the centre of the Cologne University Clinic. The ZB MED Departmental Library for Nutrition, Environment and Agriculture is located in Bonn. – Photo: ZB MED

prehensive as possible, thus enabling them to supplement the German National Library and the two state general libraries in Berlin and Munich in fulfilling their national mandate. These exhaustive acquisitions profiles include the collection of grey literature, electronic resources and non-book media of all kinds, which is processed and made available for interlibrary loan and document delivery. For this reason they receive joint funding from the Federal Government and the *Länder*.

The Technical Information Library—Leibniz Information Centre for Science and Technology and University Library (*Technische Informationsbibliothek* – TIB) in Hanover, founded in 1959, is the central German subject library for technology, architecture, chemistry, computer science, mathematics and physics. In 2016 it was amalgamated with Hanover University Library to form a public law foundation. The TIB forms part of the national research infrastructure and is the largest special library worldwide in its own subject areas. As high-performing document delivery agency it delivers literature and information in both print and electronic form, benefiting science, research, industry and business.

The TIB supports research, learning and work processes in science and industry communities with its wide range of services, including a search and order gateway providing access to over 80 million scientific and technical records.

In addition to nearly 9.2 million media units, the Library's outstanding collections include more than 57,000 current journals (of which 42,500 are in electronic form), 76.6 million electronic documents, 17.3 million patents, norms and standards, and other relevant media such as audio-visual media, 3D models and research data.

The TIB ensures both the quality and the long-term accessibility of research data by assigning DOI names (Digital Object Identifier), and providing access to the details via the TIB portal; it is also responsible for running the office of the international association DataCite, founded by the Library. In addition the TIB is currently expanding its centre of excellence for non-text materials. This has given rise to the audio-visual portal for films on, and produced by, science and technology, using search technology developed by the Library enabling exact searching within the video content. A professorship of “Visual Analytics” has been established within the Library and this chair collaborates with other research institutions to conduct applied research and development designed to optimise the Library's services. The main focus is on data science, non-text materials, open science and visual analytics.

The German National Library of Medicine—Information Centre for Life Sciences (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Medizin* – *Informationszentrum Lebenswissenschaften* – ZB MED), founded in 1969 and located in Cologne and Bonn, is the national subject centre for specialist information and research support in the life sciences. From being the largest subject library in the world for the disciplines medicine, health, nutrition, the environment and agricultural sciences it has evolved into a scientific information infrastructure facility. In 2014 the ZB MED became a public law foundation, drawing its funding from both the Federal Ministry of Health and the state of North Rhine-Westphalia. Its main goal is to provide researchers in the life sciences with value-added scientific services in the form of digital and on-site print literature and specialist information and via the semantics-based search portal LIVIVO. PUBLISSO is the ZB MED's own open access portal. To ensure long-term retrievability of journal articles and research data the ZB MED assigns Digital Object Identifiers (DOI). The information

centre also conducts application-oriented research in the field of “knowledge discovery”.

With over 1.6 million volumes and 7,500 current periodicals in addition to a further 4,000 electronic titles accessible online, the ZB MED is the largest life sciences library in Europe and the second largest medical library in the world. The library is a firm advocate of the principle of open access to publications and research data and is actively involved in the open access and research data working groups within the Leibniz Association. In addition the ZB MED is a member of the Leibniz Research Alliance Science 2.0. In order to initiate projects and develop new services in its role as service provider to science and research the ZB MED has established partnerships with many national international institutes, libraries and associations.

The German National Library of Economics—Leibniz Information Centre for Economics—ZBW (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften* – *Leibniz Informationszentrum Wirtschaft* – ZBW) is the largest special economics library in the world. Divided between its two locations in Hamburg and Kiel it houses around four million volumes and provides access to millions of online documents in the field of economics; around six million digital full-text documents were downloaded in 2015 alone. The ZBW also hosts a rapidly growing collection of open access documents. *Econstar*, the digital publications server, currently contains over 124,000 freely accessible articles and working papers. Students and researchers can use *EconBiz*, the subject portal for economics information, to search over nine million records. In addition the ZBW publishes the economics journals *Wirtschaftsdienst* and *Intereconomics*. The ZBW is a research-centred academic library: three professorships and an international postgraduate group are involved in the trans-disciplinary study of the digitization of academic research. The ZBW is part of the international research network, with its most important partners coming from the major EU projects EEXCESS and MOVING, and the Leibniz Research Alliance Science 2.0. The ZBW is a member of the Leibniz Association and a public law foundation. It has been awarded the international LIBER Award for its innovative library work on several occasions, and in 2014 was voted “Library of the Year”.



## State Libraries (*Landesbibliotheken*) and other Regional Libraries

The approximately 40 State (*Landesbibliotheken*) and other regional libraries are responsible for literature services for a particular region rather than for a particular educational or other institution. Such a region might possibly be as large as a whole federal state, or part of one; it might also be a regional area or a city with its hinterland. There are considerable differences between the regional libraries in terms of history, size, collection structure, funding agencies and, above all, name, which creates the impression that they are a very heterogeneous group. But since they all fulfil the same basic functions, it is worth considering them as belonging to the same category. Libraries with a purely federal state or regional function are usually, though not always, called State Library (*Landesbibliothek* or *Staatliche Bibliothek*).

Apart from special cases, the regional libraries have a clear mandate to provide literature covering all fields, even if many libraries traditionally focus on the humanities and social sciences. This enables them to provide users in their area—be it a city, a region or an entire Federal State—with scholarly and other literature. Their chief mission, however, is to collect, archive, catalogue and index printed literature about the region itself and make it generally available. Whilst the German National Library has been granted the right of legal deposit for the whole country, libraries with regional function have similar rights for their own region or federal state. For the past few years the regional legal deposit libraries have been work-

ing on legislation to govern the collection and archiving of electronic publications and websites; indeed in some states they have achieved partial success. This has involved close contact with the DNB in areas such as electronic newspapers (e-papers).

The law of legal deposit, which most regional libraries implement, is the basis for the compilation and regular publication of regional bibliographies containing all new publications about one particular federal state, including its various regions and communities and persons connected with them. Previously this took the form of a printed bibliography, but searchable databases have since replaced the printed editions. Regional bibliographies (*Landesbibliographien*) now cover the whole of the Federal Republic. The Virtual German Regional Bibliography (*Virtuelle Deutsche Landesbibliographie* – VDL) is the joint portal for all the German regional bibliographies.

Typical additional activities of the regional libraries are the cataloguing and care of historical and older holdings, the collection and processing of personal estates and archives of prominent local citizens, the maintenance of literary archives, and intensive cultural and public relations programmes with exhibitions, lectures, readings, concerts, etc. In this they often receive financial assistance from library societies and Friends of the Library groups, which are able to step into the breach when the library budget is low or when unbureaucratic help is at a premium

Most state libraries (*Landesbibliotheken*) have evolved from court libraries; some of them owe their existence to an earlier role as deposit libraries for the items removed from the monasteries during the dissolution (Amberg, Bamberg, Passau, Regensburg); others have collections with close historical links to the libraries of the *Gymnasien* (Coburg, Gotha). A few were found-

The Regional Library of Oldenburg (*Landesbibliothek Oldenburg*) in Lower Saxony, a scholarly general library with regional emphasis, was founded in 1792. In 1987 it moved into its present premises in a renovated and re-designed infantry barracks. Its holdings of 785,000 media can also be used by members of the University of Oldenburg, opened in 1974, which has its own library and information system housing 1.5 million media. – Photo: C. Seelbach



The Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz Library – Regional Library of Lower Saxony in Hanover (*Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek*) houses Leibniz' considerable collection of personal papers and is a centre for research on the distinguished polymath. In his estate is the calculator Leibniz constructed in 1695 for all four basic arithmetical operations. The essential principles remained unchanged into the 20th century. In 2007 Unesco incorporated the 15,000 documents in the collection of Leibniz' correspondence into the World Heritage Program "Memory of the World". – Photo: GW Leibniz Library

ed as late as the 20th century by the Federal Government or by some other regional governing authority (Aurich, Koblenz, Speyer). The dwindling numbers of Academic City Libraries (*Wissenschaftliche Stadtbibliotheken*) evolved from City Council Libraries (*Ratsbüchereien*) or historical city libraries (Lübeck, Nuremberg, Ulm), though some were not established until the 20th century (ZLB Berlin, Dortmund) and others can be traced back to the dissolution of a university library (Mainz, Trier). Examples of the integration of city and state libraries can be found in Potsdam and Berlin.

For historical and geographical reasons, several federal states in Germany have more than one older Regional or State Library, others none at all. In such cases, the university libraries perform the appropriate regional duties in addition to their original functions and this double mandate is reflected in the library's name. Thus we find combinations such as "University and State Library" (*Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek*) (Bonn, Darmstadt, Düsseldorf, Halle, Jena, Münster, Saarbrücken), "State and University Library" (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek*) (Bremen, Hamburg) or "University and Regional Library" (*Hochschul- und Landesbibliothek*) (Fulda,

Wiesbaden). In Rhineland-Palatinate both regional libraries in Koblenz and Speyer were merged in 2004 with the *Bibliotheca Bipontina* in Zweibrücken and the Public Library Agencies in Neustadt/Weinstrasse and Koblenz to form a multifunctional "Regional Library Centre".

In many places, regional libraries are also involved in the provision of literature services for study, research, and teaching purposes. They are fully integrated into the regional and national structure of the academic and research library system, make their scholarly literature available through the interlibrary loan network, and hold particular interest for researchers because of their collections of older and specialized material. Especially in the cities with recently founded universities (Augsburg, Bamberg, Oldenburg, Trier) or other newer institutions of higher education (Zwickau), or in cities where universities evolved from technical colleges (Hanover, Karlsruhe, Stuttgart), the regional libraries supplement the literature provision services of the universities in certain subject areas.

Several of the former court libraries with valuable historical book collections have con-



The origins of the State and City Library of Augsburg (Bavaria) can be traced back to the Augsburg City Library founded in 1537; it is one of Bavaria's State Libraries. Today its role is chiefly as a regional research library covering the history of the former imperial city of Augsburg, the Swabian area of Bavaria and early modern scientific history. As legal deposit library it is responsible for archiving the region's official publications and other printed works. The neo-Baroque building, inaugurated in 1893, was considered an outstanding example of library architecture because of its multi-tiered stack shelving. – Photo: Augsburg State and City Library





The Library of the Francke Foundations (*Bibliothek der Franckeschen Stiftungen*) in Halle (Saxony-Anhalt), established in 1698 in connection with the founding of an orphanage, has been housed in its own building since 1728. The shelves holding the book collections are arranged in the room to resemble theatre backdrops. After completion of restoration work in 1998, the Baroque “scenery library” (“*Kulissenbibliothek*”) was once more able to radiate its original 18th century splendour. – Photo: W. Ziegler

centrated on selected fields of the humanities and cultural history and today consider themselves to be research libraries (*Forschungsbibliotheken*) with their own acquisitions profile. This research affinity manifests itself in the independent scholarly activities of these libraries and their support of research projects such as the preparation of critical editions, the awarding of scholarships and the organization and hosting of international conferences. The Duke August Library (*Herzog August Bibliothek*) in Wolfenbüttel, specializing in European cultural history of early modern times, is a member of this small but important group, as is also the Duchess Anna Amalia Library (*Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek*) in Weimar, dedicated especially to the collection of German classical literature. Both libraries have excellent older

collections, available to researchers for reference and for the most part on open access, arranged by subject and complemented by the appropriate current secondary literature.

The Research Library of Gotha (*Forschungsbibliothek Gotha*), now part of the University Library of Erfurt, has comprehensive collections of older material, originally covering all subject fields, but since 1850 dominated by the humanities. The Main Library of the Francke Foundations (*Hauptbibliothek der Franckeschen Stiftungen*) in Halle did not originate as a regional library, but was established for educational purposes in 1698. It is a research library specializing in ecclesiastical history and the history of education in the early modern period, and concentrates on acquisitions in these fields.

#### **Libraries of Higher Education Institutions**

In the Federal Republic of Germany, the funding of higher education is usually the responsibility of the Federal states (*Bundesländer*). The three-tiered structure of the various institutions of higher education detailed above

also determines the library structure of these institutions, namely the following: traditional university libraries, the libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences and the libraries of the music and fine arts conservatories together with the universities of administrative science (*Verwaltungshochschulen*). In Baden Württemberg there are also the libraries of the colleges of education and the state cooperative universities. At the end of 2015 German universities numbered 426, including institutions with state, private and church funding. Universities house around 3,600 libraries of all shapes and sizes, including departmental libraries. Together they provide the approximately 2.9 million current students with access to about 185 million books, 4.2 million current periodicals in digital form and 223,000 print subscriptions. The combined acquisitions budgets totalled well over 278 million Euros in 2010.

#### **University Libraries**

The primary function of the libraries of the 107 universities and other similar institutions of higher education is to provide the members of their institutions—from student to professor—with the requisite literature for study, research and teaching purposes. Thus they form a functionally homogeneous group, even though they often differ considerably from one another in terms of age, historical development, size of holdings and number of users, and budget etc. However, university libraries can also always be used for scholarly purposes by non-university members, although not always free of charge. Some also have additional, explicitly regional functions and several participate in the subject specialization scheme (*Sondersammelgebietsplan*) of the German Research Foundation and are responsible for collecting a particular subject. In addition to traditional literature provi-

sion on the basis of their own collections, these libraries have for some time now been providing information reference services including databases and electronic publications in the context of the “Digital Library” (*Digitale Bibliothek*). An increasing proportion of the acquisitions budget is spent on electronic resources.

Most university libraries can put between 1.5 and 2.5 million volumes at their users’ disposal. Many older university libraries (Freiburg, Heidelberg, Jena, Tübingen), together with the State and University Library Hamburg (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Hamburg*) which has its roots in the City Library founded in 1479, the University and City Library of Cologne (*Universitäts- und Stadtbibliothek Köln*) rechartered in 1919, and individual libraries established in the 1960’s (Bremen, Düsseldorf, Regensburg), hold between 2.5 and 3 million volumes. The largest libraries, with collections of between 3 to 4 million volumes, include the Library of the Humboldt University of Berlin, the Library of the Johann Christian Senckenberg University in Frankfurt am Main and the State and University Library of Göttingen. The libraries of the smaller institutions of higher education, especially those with a more restricted range of courses,



The Library of the *Historicum*, a departmental library of Munich University Library (Bavaria), brought together under one roof collections previously scattered over a number of smaller libraries when it was opened in 1999. It provides the 4,000 students and 250 staff of the history, archaeology and Byzantine studies departments with 325 reading spaces and a reference collection of over 200,000 volumes. – Photo: J. Feist, ekz



have holdings significantly under the one million-volume mark (Hildesheim, Ilmenau, Koblenz/Landau, Lübeck). Most university libraries subscribe to between 5,000 and 10,000 current periodicals in conventional print form, alongside an increasing number of electronic journals. Access is through the Electronic Periodicals Library (EZB) on the basis of the DFG national licences. Only a few federal states charge tuition fees, and there are considerable differences in the benefits they bring to university libraries.

University libraries are in general responsible for collecting literature on all subjects, not just those taught at their particular institution. In the 1960s the libraries began to build textbook collections to provide the students with up-to-date editions of the basic literature for their courses. Until 2014 quite a number of university

libraries were responsible for one or more of the DFG's Special Subject Fields and made the literature thus acquired available through the national interlibrary loan network; some of these have since become part of the Specialised Information Services (FID) programme. But just as important as these new acquisitions are the collections of older and specialized material often in particular held by the older universities. These may include manuscripts, autographs, personal papers, early imprints, maps, musical scores, and many other kinds of publication. The technical university libraries have special collections in the form of standards and patents.

The two basic forms most often encountered in the German university library system are the "single-tier" (*einschichtig*) and the "two-tier" (*zweischichtig*) system, with a strong bias towards the adoption of the single-tier structure.

At traditional universities with a two-tier system there is a main university library with closed stacks, a lending area, a textbook collection, and user services such as interlibrary loan and information and reference services. The second tier comprises a variable number of independent departmental, institute, or faculty libraries which are usually non-lending reference libraries, with books arranged by subject on open access. Whilst the central university library focuses on the acquisition of general and interdisciplinary literature, the departmental libraries—which have their own budgets—concentrate on the literature of their subject area, especially highly specialized research literature. To help overcome the disadvantages of this dual system and underpin the collaborative measures introduced since the German Research Foundation drew up its recommendations, cooperative schemes have been launched at many universities. However, even in those

Germany's oldest university in Heidelberg (Baden-Württemberg), founded in 1386, has a two-tier library system with a central University Library and over 50 departmental branches, including nine large libraries each containing over 100,000 volumes. Among the Library's world-famous treasures is the Great Heidelberg Song Manuscript, the *Codex Manesse*, with its popular miniatures of Walther von der Vogelweide (*Cod. Pal. germ. 848, Fol. 124r*). – Photo: UL Heidelberg



The new university library building in Karlsruhe (Baden-Württemberg), opened in 2006, was from the start designed as a round-the-clock library. It provides the students and staff of the Karlsruhe Institute of Technology (KIT), formerly the University of Karlsruhe, with 530 studying places. That the library is equipped with the latest automation technology is clear from its RFID self-issue facilities, its book return machine with automatic sorting of the returned books, the automatic inter-library loan processor for the issue and return of ILL requests, the dispensing machine for the issue and return of cloakroom locker keys and the electronic entry control function during evening and night-time opening hours. – Photo: T. Mechau

tralized. The holdings—partially available for lending, partially for reference and onsite use only—are often scattered over several sectional subject libraries, though they may occasionally be concentrated at one location. They are invariably on open access and arranged by subject according to a detailed classification scheme.

### **Libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences and other Higher Educational Institutions**

cases where the university has reformed its constitution so as to put the Director of the Main Library in charge of all library staff and to prescribe an integrated library system, the practical task of replacing a former two-tier by a so-called functional single-tier system is still a difficult task. The exorbitant price increases in journal subscriptions, the availability and management of electronic resources, and the employment of professionally qualified staff are factors which favour the current trend towards centralization.

At the newer universities founded since the late sixties, most of which have a single-tier library system, there is only one library, which combines the functions of both the central university library and of the decentralized departmental libraries. This uniform library structure had also been established in the universities of the GDR and was continued following reunification, but because of on-going problems in the university building sector it has yet not been implemented in all libraries. Single-tier library systems are characterized by having one single director who is responsible for the supervision of all library staff, and by the central allocation and distribution of the acquisitions budget. Most of the library work procedures are cen-

The German Universities of Applied Sciences are a relatively new form of higher educational institution, already introduced in the Western German States in the 1970's but not until after 1990 in the Eastern States. They evolved from former engineering schools and higher technical colleges of economics, social work, design and other disciplines. In the last few years most have undergone a change of name from College (*Fachhochschule*) to University (*Hochschule*) or Technical University (*Technische Hochschule*). According to the German Council of Science and Humanities there were 216 Universities of Applied Sciences in Germany in 2016 (without the right to award doctorates), of which 62 were non-state funded. Altogether they offer around 2,300 bachelor degrees courses, 1,250 master's courses and more than 450 other courses. In contrast to the classic universities, the Universities of Applied Sciences and technical colleges do not provide their students with a purely academic education but aim instead to equip them with the necessary practice-related, theory-based knowledge for the independent pursuit of their chosen profession

The libraries of the Universities of Applied Sciences do not have the scope of the traditional universal libraries but are more akin





to special libraries with the main focus on those subjects taught in their institutions. In accordance with their mandate, these libraries mainly contain basic literature and textbooks, often in multiple copies. The size of the libraries varies enormously. In some cases, several institutions of higher education have been merged to form a single University of Applied Sciences with a library of over 250,000 volumes and up to 1,000 current periodicals. In other cases, however, considerably smaller Universities of Applied Sciences and technical colleges with a correspondingly limited range of courses have resulted in libraries of modest dimensions.

The libraries of the art and music academies reflect the less important role literature plays in music and the performing arts; they are therefore comparatively small. A notable exception is the Library of the Academy of Fine Arts (*Universität der Künste* – UdK) in Berlin (327,000 volumes), which has shared the new “Volkswagen University Library” building with the library of the Technical University since 2004. Libraries are also maintained by the colleges of public administration, the Cooperative State Universities (*Duale Hochschulen*) and professional academies established in some federal states and by privately funded institutions of higher

In contrast to the University of Konstanz, not founded until 1966, the roots of Konstanz University of Applied Sciences (Baden-Württemberg) go right back to 1906, when a private school of engineering was established in the wake of industrialisation; this school later became the current University of Applied Sciences. With the exception of the social sciences all the traditional applied disciplines are taught here, with the emphasis on technical subjects. In 1997 the Library moved into the Konstanz abbatoir, built in 1879 and situated right in the centre of the University campus and still in use until 1991. – Photo: B. Hannemann, HTWK Konstanz

education. Only in Baden-Württemberg do independent teachers’ training colleges with corresponding libraries still exist; in the other Federal states, teacher training education has been integrated into the university course structure, or the teachers’ training colleges have been expanded to form universities.

### Special and Technical Libraries

The around 2,600 special libraries, which include public, religious and private institutions, make up the largest and at the same time very varied group within the academic libraries category. Common to all these libraries is their restricted subject range and their association with a particular institution, for which they are the exclusive, or at least the primary, providers of library services. The acquisition of

new literature in special libraries is especially geared to the current and practice-related needs of that institution’s employees and special attention is paid to titles published outside the normal commercial book trade. Printed and electronic journals are far more important in special and technical libraries than books. In science and technology special libraries in particular, online information services are ousting traditional methods of literature provision. The Kekulé Library of the Bayer concern, opened in 1901, was closed in 2005, making way for a virtual works library with no physical book stock.

Cataloguing and indexing often extend well beyond the bibliographic and subject cataloguing scope of the large general academic libraries; they include in-depth documentation and services tailored to the needs of the individual customer. Special libraries are generally reference libraries, although many of them participate in the German interlibrary loan network. Since they usually serve a limited clientele with well-defined information needs and literature requirements, the main emphasis in special libraries is on service.

The over 500 parliamentary, administrative and judicial libraries (*Parlaments-, Behörden- und Gerichtsbibliotheken*) form a homogeneous sub-group within the broad special library

spectrum. These institutions, most of which were not founded until after the war, mainly exist to serve the needs of the administrative and legislative bodies and have therefore concentrated on the acquisition of legal and political literature. Their collections consist largely of official publications, government documents, and “grey literature” (*Graues Schrifttum*). These, too, are libraries for reference use only and offer either limited access to outsiders or are not open to the public at all.

In addition to the Library of the German Parliament in Berlin mentioned above, other notable libraries in this group are the libraries of the parliaments and governments of the *Länder*, and of the ministries and the supreme Federal administrative authorities. In some cases the libraries may reach a very respectable size, as demonstrated by the Senate Library (*Senatsbibliothek*) in Berlin (485,000 volumes, now part of the Central and Regional Library), the Library of the Foreign Office (*Auswärtiges Amt*) in Berlin (320,000 volumes, 91,000 maps and atlases), the German Patent Office (*Deutsches Patentamt*) in Munich (990,000 volumes including the patents themselves which number over 50 million documents) and the Federal Office of Statistics (*Statistisches Bundesamt*) in Wiesbaden (450,000 volumes).

The Munich City Library Law Library, founded in 1843, has been housed since 1906 in a lavishly decorated Art Nouveau reading room with two galleries in the New Town Hall of Bavaria’s capital city (architect: Georg von Hauberrisser). The Law Library is the working reference library of Munich’s City Council and administration, but is also open to ordinary citizens; in addition it is highly sought-after as a venue for cultural and commercial events, or as a film-set. – Photo: M. Schwarz





Among the libraries of the courts of the *Länder* and the Federal Government, those of the Federal Supreme Court (*Bundesgerichtshof*) with 439,000 volumes and of the Federal Constitutional Court (*Bundesverfassungsgericht*) with 390,000 volumes, both of which are located in Karlsruhe, deserve special mention. In the judicial libraries, as indeed in all special libraries, other literature and media forms play an important role alongside the usual extensive holdings of microforms and electronic media, books and journals. For example, the Library of the Federal Constitutional Court maintains an archive containing over 1.2 million indexed press clippings.

The category of special libraries in the narrow sense includes the libraries of the Federal Government and *Länder* research institutions, of the scientific associations, and of archives, museums and clinics. Also included are libraries belonging to religious corporate bodies and institutions, including the monasteries, and those maintained by companies, syndicates, associations, and societies. Despite the considerable differences between individual libraries, it is fair to say that they have the following characteristics in common: They concentrate on the acquisition of material related to their main function, usually including a high percentage of “grey” and non-conventional literature; they make intensive use of online electronic resources; they undertake in-depth cataloguing



The German Literature Archive in Marbach (Baden-Württemberg), the Schiller National Museum and the Modern Literature Museum together form a hub charged with the collection, study and dissemination of works and information on German-language literature and intellectual history. The Archive's outstanding collections include around 1,400 literary estates. In the autograph collection are to be found letters by Friedrich Schiller, Franz Kafka and Günther Grass. – Photo: M. Michaelis, DLA Marbach

of periodical articles and individual book chapters, they are for reference only, and they do not archive older titles of little current interest. The size of their collections varies considerably, ranging from well over 1 million volumes to a few thousand titles. The number of staff varies correspondingly, and many special libraries can best be described as “*One Person Libraries*” (OPL), run by a single qualified librarian.

A forum for cooperative exchange is provided by the German Association of Special Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken* e.V. – ASpB), founded in 1946 and since 1989 also a member of Section V of the German Library

Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband*). Headed by a board of three members and an advisory council of nine, the ASpB promotes co-operation between the various special libraries and information specialists, offers its members further qualification and training opportunities, and organises the biennial ASpB Work and Training Conference with workshops and committee meetings. The sheer variety of specialist groups, an important unifying factor within the ASpB, bears witness to the heterogeneity of the special library landscape. Among these are the Working Group of Libraries and Documentation Centres of East, Eastern Central and South-East European Studies (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Bibliotheken und Dokumentationsstellen der Ost-, Ostmittel- und Südeuropaforschung* e.V. – ABDOS), the Working Group of Private University Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Bibliotheken privater Hochschulen* – AG BpH), the Working Group of Medical Librarianship (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft für medizinisches Bibliothekswesen* e.V. – AGMB), the Working Group of Art and Museum Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Kunst- und Museumsbibliotheken* – AKMB), the Working Group of Catholic Theological Libraries

(*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Katholisch-Theologischer Bibliotheken* – AKThB) and the Working Group of Parliamentary and Administration Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Parlaments- und Behördenbibliotheken* – APBB).

There is only room here to give a few examples from the vast spectrum of special libraries spanning all imaginable subject fields. A particularly large number of libraries are to be found in the pure and applied sciences, e.g. the Library of the German Science Museum (*Deutsches Museum*) in Munich, a special library for science, technology and their history (954,000 media units), the Library of the German Weather Centre (*Deutscher Wetterdienst*) in Offenbach (183,000 volumes), the central library of the Research Centre in Jülich (*Forschungszentrum Jülich GmbH*),

The German National Library of Economics (*Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Wirtschaftswissenschaften* – ZBW) in Kiel (Schleswig-Holstein) is the world's largest special library for business and economic literature, with over four million volumes. In 2001 a 6,400 m<sup>2</sup> extension (architect: Walter von Lom) was inaugurated in 2001. Together with the older building of the Institute for World Economy (Institut für Weltwirtschaft), erected at the turn of the last century and the former guest house of the Krupp family, it forms an impressive complex on the banks of the Kieler Fjord, uniting research departments, library and closed stacks. – Photo: L. Roth, ZBW







Books and libraries have always been part of monastery life and this was no less true of the Benedictine Abbey in Maria Laach (Rhineland-Palatinate) founded in 1093. In addition to the Armarium, where the books were kept, the Library also had a Scriptorium, where manuscripts were written. In 1862, exactly 60 years after the dissolution of the monastery, the Abbey was purchased by the Jesuits, who then built a library there for their study centre. The Library is now reckoned to be one of the finest 19th century rooms in existence. The Benedictine monks acquired the holdings, currently numbering 260,000 volumes, over the period since 1892, the year of their return to the Abbey. In 2013 an extension to the library was built in a former cowshed. – Photo: Maria Laach Abbey

specializing in modern technology (182,000 volumes, 500,000 reports), the library of the German Leopoldina Academy of Researchers in the Natural Sciences (*Deutsche Akademie der Naturforscher Leopoldina*) in Halle (291,000 media). Two representative medical libraries are the main library of the German Cancer Research Centre (*Deutsches Krebsforschungszentrum*) in Heidelberg (100,000 media units) and the library of the world-renowned Mathematical Research Institute (*Mathematisches Forschungsinstitut*) in Oberwolfach (87,000 volumes). Examples in the field of medicine are the Central Library of the German Cancer Research Centre (*Deutsches Krebsforschungszentrum*) in Heidelberg (100,000 media units) and the Physicians' Central Library of the University Clinic (*Ärztliche Zentralbibliothek des Universitäts-Klinikums*) in Hamburg-Eppendorf (296,000 media units).

In the humanities, which are particularly dependent on literature, special libraries also play an important role in the research process outside the universities. Some examples are: The Library of the Friedrich Ebert Foundation

(*Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung*) in Bonn, closely associated with the Social Democratic Party of Germany and specializing in its history and that of the labour movements (891,000 volumes); the Library of the Latin American Institute (*Ibero-Amerikanisches Institut*) in Berlin (1.2 million volumes); the Library of the German National Museum (*Germanisches Nationalmuseum*) in Nuremberg, with collections covering the history of art and culture (650,000 volumes), the Library of the German Armed Forces Centre for Military History and Social Sciences (*Bibliothek des Zentrum für Militärgeschichte und Sozialwissenschaften der Bundeswehr*) in Potsdam

(250,000 media units) and the Library of the German Armed Forces Museum of Military History (*Militärhistorischen Museums der Bundeswehr*) in Dresden (36,000 volumes). Special mention should be given to the German Literature Archive (*Deutsches Literaturarchiv*) in Marbach on the Neckar River, which as combined library and archive functions as central focus for German literature from the Enlightenment to the present (975,000 volumes, 1,400 personal literary estates, 200,000 images).

Naturally enough, church-funded libraries predominate in the religious and theological field. They serve not only researchers but also the church administration and theological seminaries. Among those libraries funded by the Catholic Church are monastic libraries such as those of the Benedictine monasteries (*Benediktinerabtei Beuron* with 430,000 volumes, and *Benediktinerabtei Maria Laach* with 260,000 volumes), diocesan libraries (*Erzbischöfliche Diözesan- und Dombibliothek* in Cologne with 740,000 volumes) and the libraries of the seminaries (*Bischöfliches Priesterseminar Trier*, 455,000 volumes). Examples of Protestant-funded libraries are those of the regional church organizations (*Landeskirchen*), such as the Library and Media Centre of the Northern Church (*Bibliotheks- und Medienzentrum der Nordkirche*) in Hamburg (208,000 volumes). Owned by an ecclesiastical civil law foundation, the *Johannes a Lasco Bibliothek* in Emden (150,000 volumes) is a special library for reformed Protestantism and the ecclesiastical history of the early modern period.

The particular significance of the parliamentary, administrative and judicial (court) libraries for political science, law and economics has already been touched on. In addition, six of the Max Planck Institutes specialize in particular branches of law and maintain corresponding special libraries in Freiburg (450,000 volumes), Frankfurt am Main (450,000 volumes), Hamburg (525,000 volumes), Heidelberg (638,000 volumes), and two in Munich (260,000 and 120,000 volumes). The library of the German Federal Bank (*Deutsche Bundesbank*) in Frankfurt am Main (238,000 media units) specializes in collecting material on the monetary, banking and stock market systems.

Some special libraries are located abroad. These include the libraries of the German

Archaeological Institute (*Deutsches Archäologisches Institut*) in Athens, Bagdad, Istanbul, Cairo, Lisbon, Madrid, Rome and Teheran, along with the library of the Institute of Art History (*Kunsthistorisches Institut*) in Florence (360,000 volumes, 580,000 photos), the *Bibliotheca Hertziana* in Rome (307,000 volumes), and the libraries of the German Historical Institute (*Deutsches Historisches Institut*) located in London, Paris, Rome, Warsaw and Washington. Their main focus is on archaeology, history, the history of art, and oriental studies, and they actively contribute to the scholarly and cultural exchange with their respective host countries. Somewhat more modest (19,000 volumes) is the library of the German Institute for Japanese Studies (*Deutsches Institut für Japanstudien*) in Tokyo.

The *Goethe Institutes* maintain special libraries and reading-rooms with literature and media about Germany, targeting a broad section of the public in their host countries. They collaborate closely with the language instruction and cultural programmes of their Institutes. Since their task is to provide current information, there is a policy of continuous stock management; they do not archive older materials. The total holdings of all the *Goethe Institute libraries* together amount to approximately 0.9 million books and other media.

### Public Libraries

The public library (*Öffentliche Bibliothek – ÖB*) is the most common kind of library in the Federal Republic of Germany. The DBS database of addresses lists 9,858 public library locations (including branches), irrespective of funding type (updated 31/12/2015). German towns, municipalities and administrative districts maintain a total of around 4,982 local public library locations (including branches) and are also responsible for an estimated further 2,500 appropriately equipped school libraries and media centres. In some federal states, the counties have established county libraries (*Kreisbibliotheken*) or county and city libraries (*Kreis- und Stadtbibliotheken*), of which there are about 40. At the level of the parishes and church communities, the Catholic and Protestant Churches also maintain public libraries



(about 4,100 in all). If the addresses of all those library institutions registered in the HBZ database—whether public, church or private, and including mobile, music, hospital, school, works and prison libraries, and libraries for the blind—were added together, they would amount to a total of around 12,000 locations with full-time or voluntary staff to be reckoned to the public sector.

It should be noted that the number of libraries recorded in the German Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik*) is actually slightly less than the total number of public libraries, since not all libraries submit their data. The 9,117 public libraries maintain over-all holdings of more than 118.6 million media, with 363.2 million items circulating in 2015.

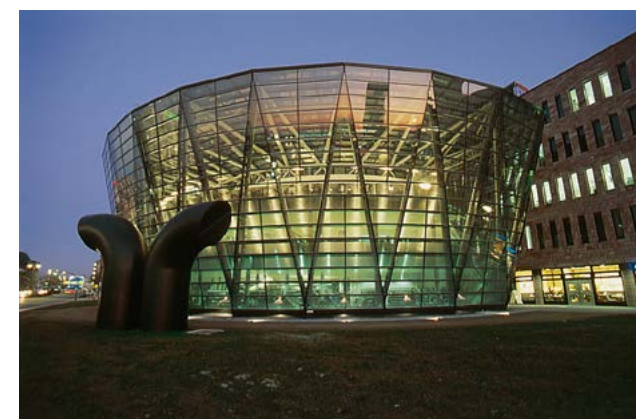
### Local Authority Public Libraries

Local authority public libraries are responsible for the provision of basic literature and media services to the public at large. According to the DBS 3,023 of these are run by full-time employees, while 1,959 are run by voluntary or part-time staff. Generally they are known as *Stadtbibliotheken* (city libraries, using the

Latin derivation “Bibliothek”) though some are named *Stadt- or Gemeindebüchereien* (city or local libraries, with the more homely Germanic designation “Bücherei”). They form an essentially tightly knit library network, though in the rural regions it is sometimes a little patchy and growing thinner due to municipal funding problems. Since local authorities are not legally bound to maintain public libraries, less than half actually do so. Only a few federal states grant financial support to municipalities to set up and operate a public library or for the maintenance of book and media holdings; in all others, funding is the exclusive responsibility of the municipality.

Whereas the better-off municipalities with high levels of tax-based income, whose decision-makers view cultural and educational matters favourably, actively promote and fund libraries, the poorer communities, or those whose managers and administration show little interest in the area of education, often lack the necessary support to maintain their library service. It would seem that there is considerable inconsistency in how decision-makers see the function and potential of the library. Although the various professional librarianship

The Central Library of the City and Regional Library in Dortmund (North Rhine-Westphalia) (architect: Mario Botta) was opened in 1999 and set a new accent in urban architecture. A bright, glass-fronted open-access area in the form of a semi-circle or rotunda is set before the long stone main building. The Library's facilities include a large music library, an art library and a manuscripts department; its holdings total around 1.1 million media. – Photo: J. Feist



organisations have campaigned for many years, the success they have achieved in realising the potential of the library as an information centre varies considerably from region to region. This is mostly, if not entirely, due to libraries' dependency on local cultural politics and to tight public budgets. However these constant financial reservations on the part of the funding agencies appear in a rather different light when the burden of the public library budget is examined more closely, for the cost of funding the library sector is actually comparatively modest: in 2015 only around 0.25% of the total amount spent by all cities and municipalities on culture was related to public libraries.

No matter what their funding, public libraries are an important factor in the realization of every citizen's right to “inform himself without hindrance from generally accessible sources” as guaranteed by the Basic Law, Article 5, Paragraph 1. They enable the citizen to participate in the cultural and social life of the community and so fulfil the requirement voiced by IFLA in its 1994 *Public Library Manifesto*. The public library, with its services and media resources, plays a central role in the education system. At the same time, they help to promote the principle of equal opportunity for all.

In addition to providing information and general education services, public libraries also make an important contribution to professional training and continuing education, to the promotion of meaningful leisure activities, and especially to the encouragement of reading. In the information society, the teaching of media and information literacy will increase in importance. Furthermore, the public library has become a place of communication and a meeting point, both factors contributing to its increasing significance as cultural centre for a wide range of events.

Public libraries collect non-fiction, including scholarly works from all subject areas, vocational training materials, reference works of all kinds, journals and newspapers, literary and leisure fiction, books for children and young people, and additional collections targeting special user groups, such as books in the languages of the major non-German ethnic groups (Turkish, modern Greek, Russian, etc.). Print holdings have been continually expanded since the 1970's to include first audio-visual media (videos, language and music cassettes) and games, followed in the 1990's by electronic and digital media (compact discs, CD-ROMs, DVDs, Blu-ray discs) and public internet access. Quite a few libraries in large and medium-sized towns have also established art and graphics libraries (*Artothek, Graphothek*) or music libraries (*Musikbibliothek*) offering access to printed music and other materials. More than 3,200 public libraries now offer an online lending service for media such as e-books, e-papers, e-audios and e-videos, mostly through lending networks. The two services *Onleihe* (a name derived from the words „online“ and the German for lending, „Ausleihe“, hosted by the ekz group and available at more than 3,200 public libraries, and the Ciando Library service, run by Ciando GmbH in Munich and offered by around 200 libraries, continue to attract a large number of users of all ages.

Public library collections in the individual Federal *Länder* differ considerably in size, ranging from 2,000 media units in small local libraries run mostly by volunteers up to between



In 1998 a former slaughterhouse was converted into a modern city library in the city of Landau in the Southern Palatinate (Rhineland-Palatinate), housing around 75,000 media. The three-section “house within a house” which accommodates the Library is constructed of steel, glass, wood, brick and sandstone. Like many other public libraries, Landau boasts a library café where readers can meet and communicate. – Photo: J. Feist





The library system of the City Library in Duisburg (North Rhine-Westphalia) consists of the Main Library opened in 2015 and 13 branches, with a mobile library serving the outskirts. The 490,000 city inhabitants have access to more than 600,000 media. The Main Library is housed on three light and airy floors in the “Window on the City” (*Stadtfenster*) building. The first floor houses the new children’s and young people’s libraries, the design reflecting the “house within a house” concept. – Photo: krischerfotografie

one and three million media in individual metropolitan library systems (Berlin, Bremen, Duisburg, Frankfurt am Main, Hamburg, Hanover, Cologne, Lübeck, Munich, etc.). Most libraries in the larger cities (locations with more than 100,000 inhabitants) can offer their users between 150,000 and one million media units. Only a small percentage of public libraries manage to realize the goal of 2 media units per citizen recommended in library planning documents. In 2015 average public spending on new books and media in public libraries amounted to 1.20 euros per head of the population.

According to the DBS German library statistics for 2015 the following characteristics are typical of the average professionally-staffed public library:

- 400 m<sup>2</sup> space
- 30,000 media units (incl. e-media)
- around 3.2 full-time staff
- catchment area of around 20,000 inhabitants
- open 18 hours per week
- media provision of 1.4 units per inhabitant, 32 journal subscriptions, 2 PCs with internet connection
- on average almost one activity offered per week, with the emphasis on children and school classes
- 15% of the inhabitants are active users (mostly over 18 years old)
- two thirds of inhabitants have visited the library at some time
- 33,000 library visitors per year
- 4.3 media units circulated per inhabitant per year
- ratio of circulation to stock of about 3
- publicly funded to about 95%
- the most highly frequented cultural institution in the local community

In the last few years new public libraries in particular have not only contributed more than mere architectural enhancement to the centres of many large and medium-sized cities but have also proved to be beneficial factors stimulating business and culture. Considerably more attention is paid to ensuring new or extended library buildings are also aesthetically pleasing. An effort is made to combine functional and aesthetic considerations. According to the renowned US American architect Harry Faulkner-Brown libraries must fulfil ten essential criteria: They should be easily accessible, have an interesting interior design, demonstrate an efficient cost-benefit-ratio, have comfortable climatic conditions, be compact with all amenities within short walking distance, be easily expanded, protected against fire and resistant to environmental change. Architects, constructors, interior designers and library managers must rise to the challenge of combining a whole range of considerations:

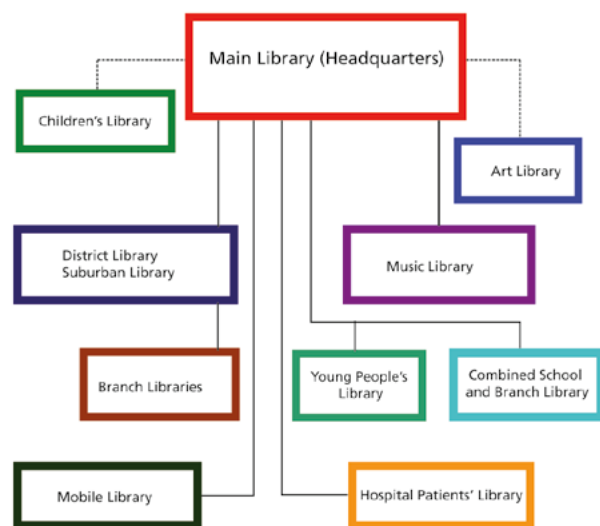
choice of location, the exterior aspects of the site, the building itself, standards and regulations, library fittings, technical infrastructure, transport systems, children’s, youth and school library requirements, training rooms, barrier-free access, the move itself, facility management and the evaluation of the project once completed.

Reliable assistance in the planning and equipment of library buildings was previous-

There are about 120 art libraries (*Artotheken* or *Graphotheken*), maintained either by public libraries, community colleges or art societies. These libraries not only lend pictures and other works of art but also help to establish contact with contemporary artists and to stimulate discussions on modern art. On average, an *Artothek* holds about 1,500 to 2,500 works for loan, primarily reproductions, and a very limited number of originals. This photo shows the Art Collection of the City Library in Biberach an der Riss (Baden-Württemberg). In 2009 the library was designated “Library of the Year” for its innovative media and service concept. – Photo: J. Seefeldt







Model of the organisational structure of an extended metropolitan library system

ly available in the form of the DIN Technical Report 13 “Planning the building and use of libraries and archives”. In 2017 this standard was superseded by the DIN Technical Report 67700 “Library and archive buildings—planning requirements and recommendations”. The new paper applies both to new library and archive buildings and to the conversion of existing premises; it includes archives and public and academic libraries of all sizes and with wide-ranging remits. The Library Service Centres have provided additional practical advice in their “Guidelines on public library buildings and equipment” published by the Expertise Group on Library Building in the Library Portal (*Bibliotheksportal*). This contains recommendations, checklists and reference information on building regulations, along with basic architectural principles, can be used to compare various technical solutions and product types, and provides particularly detailed information in those areas with an especially high impact on the future functionality of the building.

Weekly opening times differ considerably, depending on location and size of library. While most libraries run by voluntary or part-time staff in small communities with less than 5,000 inhabitants are often open only four to eight hours a week, libraries with full-time staff in

small and middle-sized cities with between 10,000 and 50,000 inhabitants provide between 10 and 25 hours of service. Most large city libraries are open daily from Monday to Saturday and reach an average of more than 40 opening hours per week. With the exception of those run by the churches, local public libraries are closed on Sundays.

Characteristic of public libraries are open access collections arranged by a combination of subjects and target user groups. Public libraries see themselves today as hands-on libraries providing their patrons with a wide range of books and non-book materials geared to their individual needs and levels. Over the last few years it has become increasingly important to offer tailor-made services to specific user groups, especially in the information field. Most libraries base their acquisitions practice on current demand and weed out unused titles, especially multiple copies. Only either libraries in the larger cities or scholarly city libraries are expected to archive older and special collections, requiring corresponding stack accommodation.

Wireless access to the internet via WiFi offers many public libraries new ways of communicating with their users and of providing services such as e-media and OPAC, or guided tours for school groups. Libraries can use Facebook and Twitter to provide round-the-clock information on their services. Not only can libraries themselves combine a variety of different media types, they can also teach the skills needed to actually use the new media. School children and senior citizens alike can come together under the guidance of a media specialist in the non-commercial setting of the library to try out the latest smartphones or tablet PCs, to keep up-to-date on subjects such as data roaming, security, data protection, contact management and podcasting or to learn how to use the appropriate App Store.

One of the libraries operating—in modified form—along the lines of the former all-in-one library model combining the functions of academic and public libraries is the Central and Regional Library in Berlin (*Zentral- und Landesbibliothek Berlin* – ZLB). The special quality of this library lies in the presentation of its holdings, featuring the direct juxtaposition of popular and highly scholarly works. This con-

cept led to library usage doubling over a ten-year period. The ZLB was established in 1995 as a public foundation, incorporating the Berlin City Library, founded in 1903, and the America Memorial Library (*Amerika-Gedenkbibliothek*), opened in 1954. It is a successful example both of German unity and the reunification of Berlin. The ZLB functions as a regional library with regional legal deposit rights; it includes historical holdings and literary estates, and naturally the largest collection of works on Berlin in the world. With its 3.5 million digital and print media units the library provides the population of Berlin with scholarly and other literature and operates as coordinating centre for the district libraries of Berlin.

The public libraries in the larger cities often merge to form a library system with a central library and several branch libraries in the suburbs. In addition, they may also have a number of special units, either at one single or several geographically separate sites, such as a children’s and young people’s library, a music library, a media centre, an art collection, mobile libraries, and school libraries with branch library function. In some towns there may be a hospital patients’ library or a prison library within the penitentiary building (*Justizvollzugsanstalt*).

There have been many new developments in the field of public relations and event management in the last five years. Libraries are declaring their readiness to welcome new and experimental ideas and to provide a forum for hands-on experience. An example is Cologne City Library, chosen by the *dbv* as Library of the Year in 2015 and using its “Maker Space” project to encourage people to watch, join in and experiment. The humanoid robot Nao is intended to complement the 3D printer and virtual reality headset already available in an attempt to introduce the public to new and important developments in society. These three innovative measures are part of a variety of practical events and discussions organised by the library.

High on the list of pressing needs libraries should be addressing is the question of opening hours. For years Sunday opening has been the subject of heated discussion within the leading professional associations—at both institutional (*dbv*) and personal level (*BIB*)—with the clash of opinions being particularly marked

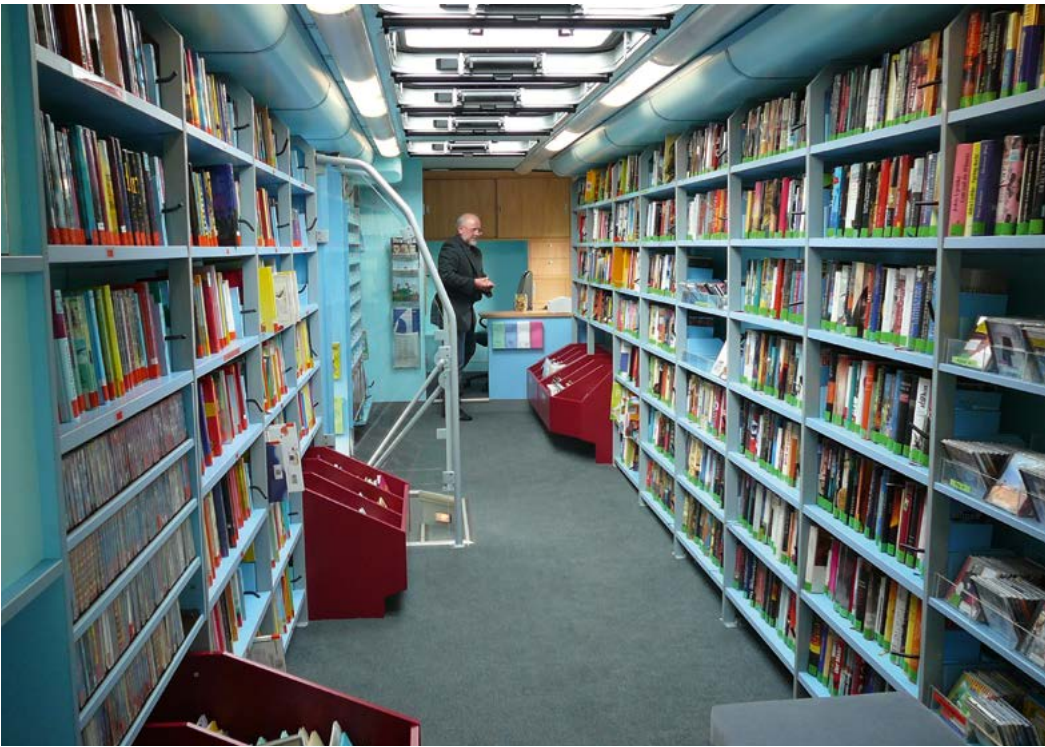
in the *BIB*, while the majority of *dbv* members support the idea. The general current of opinion seems to have changed recently from “mostly against the idea” to “mostly prepared to think about it”, though the trade union and staff representative bodies continue to oppose it.

While academic and church libraries are allowed to open on Sundays, the doors of local public libraries remain firmly closed, unlike other cultural institutions. The reason is that federal law governing permissible working hours (*Bundesarbeitszeitgesetz*) makes an exception for theatres, museums and the reference use of academic libraries. The *dbv* is calling for the Federal Government to strike the one word “academic” from the statute; this would make Sunday opening possible, but not obligatory. Local authorities would naturally have to be willing to provide the necessary library staff.

The 2015 DBS figures show that approximately 3,023 official city and local community libraries (including branch libraries) and 162 church libraries were run by full-time employees, compared to some 5,932 public libraries run by volunteers or part-time staff, with 1,905 owned by local authorities, 4,100 by the churches and 91 by other bodies. According to the 2015 DBS a total of 51,567 persons work as volunteers or part-time in small local or church libraries, whilst there are around 13,063 full-time-equivalent positions in the professionally-run libraries. Of the total holdings of approximately 118.6 million media units, about 78% (92.9 million) are housed in libraries headed by a full-time librarian. These libraries account for around 329.4 million or 91% of the 363.2 million circulation transactions annually. In the year 2015, according to the German Library Statistics, a total of around 105.5 million Euros (2001: 92 million euros, 2005: 89 million euros, 2009: 97 million euros) were spent on book and media acquisitions, with around 13.6% of the total amount accruing to smaller libraries with part-time or voluntary staff. Total public library sector spending on material and staff amounted in 2015 to around 972.3 million Euros, of which 590.0 million Euros was spent on personnel. Statistically, in 2015 every German citizen (total population 80.767 million) had 1.47 media units at his or her disposal; the total public library holdings have an annual turnaround rate of three.

| Federal State                                    | Population<br>on<br>31/12/2015 | No. of<br>participat-<br>ing libraries<br>(locations) | Main and<br>branch<br>libraries<br>(locations) | Holdings<br>in<br>media units | Total<br>circulation | Acquisi-<br>tions<br>budget<br>(€) | Events,<br>exhibitions,<br>library<br>tours | Library<br>visitors |
|--|--------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|---|---------------------|
| Baden-<br>Württemberg                            | 10,717,000                     | 1,010   | 1,233  | 17,540,000                    | 61,432,000           | 19,427,000                         | 55,000                                      | 19,039,000          |
| Bavaria  | 12,692,000                     | 1,708   | 1,952  | 22,551,00                     | 66,839,000           | 19,166,000                         | 58,000                                      | 24,712,000          |
| Berlin   | 3,470,000                      | 19  | 80   | 3,612,000                     | 18,745,000           | 3,558,000                          | 27,000                                      | 6,355,000           |
| Brandenburg                                      | 2,458,000                      | 193   | 270  | 4,290,000                     | 9,030,000            | 2,635,000                          | 12,000                                      | 2,777,000           |
| Bremen   | 662,000                        | 3   | 14   | 705,000                       | 4,030,000            | 1,202,000                          | 3,000                                       | 1,231,000           |
| Hamburg  | 1,763,000                      | 4   | 39   | 1,692,000                     | 13,740,000           | 3,539,000                          | 11,000                                      | 4,737,000           |
| Hesse  | 6,094,000                      | 560   | 690  | 7,047,000                     | 18,065,000           | 5,529,000                          | 22,000                                      | 6,179,000           |
| Lower<br>Saxony                                  | 7,826,000                      | 757   | 957  | 9,896,000                     | 30,204,000           | 7,648,000                          | 35,000                                      | 9,153,000           |
| Mecklenburg-<br>Vorpommern                       | 1,599,000                      | 92  | 105  | 2,502,000                     | 4,334,000            | 1,487,000                          | 6,000                                       | 1,526,000           |
| North Rhine-<br>Westphalia                       | 17,638,000                     | 1,527   | 1,765  | 22,738,000                    | 70,913,000           | 22,871,000                         | 72,000                                      | 24,830,000          |
| Rhineland-<br>Palatinate                         | 4,012,000                      | 601   | 663  | 4,955,000                     | 11,671,000           | 3,822,000                          | 17,000                                      | 3,368,000           |
| Saarland   | 989,000                        | 93  | 103  | 955,000                       | 1,737,000            | 640,000                            | 2,000                                       | 628,000             |
| Saxony   | 4,055,000                      | 439   | 558  | 7,992,000                     | 22,562,000           | 4,917,000                          | 20,000                                      | 6,413,00            |
| Saxony-<br>Anhalt                                | 2,236,000                      | 187   | 248  | 3,598,000                     | 6,558,000            | 1,498,000                          | 10,000                                      | 2,126,000           |
| Schleswig-<br>Holstein                           | 2,831,000                      | 140   | 151  | 4,883,000                     | 16,143,000           | 5,065,000                          | 8,000                                       | 4,739,000           |
| Thuringia  | 2,157,000                      | 260   | 289  | 4,057,000                     | 7,212,000            | 1,483,000                          | 9,000                                       | 2,530,000           |
| <b>Total for the German<br/>Federal Republic</b> | <b>80,787,000</b>              | <b>7,623</b>  | <b>9,117</b>                                   | <b>118,566,000</b>            | <b>363,217,000</b>   | <b>105,474,000</b>                 | <b>371,000</b>                              | <b>119,004,000</b>  |

Statistical review of public libraries for the year 2015 (all local authority and church-funded libraries with full-time and voluntary staff) by federal state, DBS participating libraries only, Source: German Library Statistics (Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik), updated to 31/12/2015



About 5% of the counties and 3% of the larger cities operate mobile libraries (*Fahrbibliotheken, mobile Bibliotheken, Autobüchereien*) or book buses (*Bücherbusse*). These custom-converted buses or trucks are mostly equipped with computer facilities for media issue and literature searching. The photos show the book buses of the Koblenz City Library (Rhineland-Palatinate) (below) and the City Library in Frankfurt am Main in Hesse. (above). – Photo top (exterior): J. Seefeldt, photo bottom (interior): Frankfurt am Main City Library



### Mobile Libraries

In many federal states mobile libraries in the form of book buses or large trucks are used to supplement bricks-and-mortar libraries in city perimeter communities and sparsely populated rural areas. In 2016 there were around 90 mobile libraries operating just under 110 vehicles (in 1995 there were still 150 book buses). Around 20% of these are funded by local authorities or in isolated cases by clubs, operating as independent units; the remaining 80% form part of a larger library system, usually located in cities of over 100,000 inhabitants. The yearly total circulation figures for all the book buses are around 6.5 million media units. The political goal of mobile libraries is to reduce the obvious gap between the library services enjoyed by the cities and those available in rural areas. Whereas in many small communities book buses are often used as places to meet and chat, in large cities they operate as mobile branch libraries, serving schools and nursery schools. In some cases they have





Following a century-long peregrination the Central Library of Hamm City Libraries (North Rhine-Westphalia) finally found a suitable home in 2010. The Heinrich von Kleist Forum (architects: ap plan Mory, Osterwalder, Vielmo) houses not only the library but also the city adult education centre and the private University of Logistics and Economics, (*Hochschule für Logistik und Wirtschaft*) funded by the SRH Foundation. The Forum also accommodates a general-purpose hall and a bistro. The 180,00 citizens of Hamm have access to a total of 240,00 books and other media held by the central, district and mobile libraries. In 2005 the city libraries were designated nationwide "Library of the Year" although at the time the Central Library was still located in the old building.  
– Photo: City of Hamm

replaced fixed-site branches closed as a result of budget cuts.

The main target groups are children and young people, parents with small children, the elderly, and in recent times also refugees. Cooperation with related institutions such as nursery, primary and secondary schools is one of mobile libraries' core activities. Like bricks-and-mortar libraries, mobile libraries are also actively engaged in encouraging reading, offering a wide range of library introductions, reading hours based on the school curriculum and subject-centred projects for pre-school groups and school classes. Cooperation agreements between the institutions have been invaluable in defining common goals,

deciding who does what and the next appropriate steps.

The biggest advantages of mobile libraries are their mobility and flexibility. They can quickly react to changes in population or infrastructure by adding new stops and altering the timetable, lengthening or shortening the time spent at each stop, and increasing the range of media on offer. Mobile libraries offer children the chance of regular visits to a library and are often an integral part of the curriculum. At first sight their relatively modest holdings of between 3,000 and 5,000 media along with the limited time of between 30 and 75 minutes spent at each stop could appear to be disadvantages. Internet presence and web-based OPACs on the other hand have proved particularly advantageous to both the libraries and their users: media located by searching the collective holdings either of all mobile libraries or the entire city system can be ordered as needed and delivered to the desired book bus stop point. Most buses today have an internet connection and WiFi, so that they are also able to help users with questions on *Onleihe* or e-book readers. New book buses have much better technical equipment: air-conditioning, driver assistance systems,

exhaust emission control, semi or fully automatic transmission, toilets and good lighting. It is not possible to make the book buses entirely barrier-free but it is feasible to install electric lifts giving access to wheelchair users.

The Expert Commission on Mobile Libraries (*Fachkommission Fahrbibliothek*), set up by the dbv in 2012, has proved to be an important source of guidance on questions relating to purchase, fittings, operation and design.

### State Service Centres for Public Libraries

The German states have established promotional and advisory State Service Centres for Public Libraries (*Staatliche Fachstellen für Öffentliche Bibliotheken*) at regional or state level. These are also known as State Library Agencies (*Staatliche Büchereinstellen*), Library Centres (*Büchereizentralen*) or State Agencies (*Landesfachstellen*). The first of these were founded before and after the First World War, but most of them originated after 1949. Although local libraries are the responsibility of the municipalities, the principle of state cultural and educational autonomy makes it incumbent upon the *Länder* to establish and develop an effective public information service network.

The main task of the current 24 State Service Centres for public libraries in Germany, with locations in 15 federal states, is to help local authorities meet professional library standards and develop effective library systems, to advise both state and local authorities on all public library issues, and to give practical assistance when required. The Service Centres are expected to play an active part in the planning of new libraries or the redevelopment of existing ones, to participate in the equipping of mobile libraries and the planning of library buildings, to foster the use of new media and technologies, and to support libraries in the fields of public relations, professional staff development, and all activities promoting literature and encouraging reading. The Service Centres are actively involved in developing, coordinating and managing the flourishing "Summer Reading Camps" established ten years ago. At the same time, they have the job of heightening the level of political and social awareness with reference

to the indispensable role public libraries play in the modern information society. Six federal states have made funding available to public libraries for construction programmes and special projects; applications are processed by the Service Centres and subject to special approval criteria.

One of the State Service Centres' most important goals is to offset regional differences and reduce the effects of the disparity between urban and rural areas, which often means that the rural population is at a disadvantage regarding both access to information and to media provision. The range of services offered by the Centres differs enormously from state to state, which usually means in practice that public libraries in small and medium-size communities, school libraries, and their various funding agencies stand to benefit considerably.



Following a successful local petition in 2005, Augsburg City Library moved from its former inadequate accommodation to a new building, opened in 2009 (architects: Hans and Stefan Schrammel). Transparency is the key architectural feature, emphasized by the use of state-of-the-art energy-saving technology, by intense colour effects and the unusual use of light. Hundreds of mirrors direct daylight into the building's interior, foregoing the need for artificial lighting. Sunlight is refracted by prism rods into the elements of the spectrum, throwing a rainbow of colours onto the white background wall. – Photo: J. Schambeck





A renovated villa combined with an attractive new concrete and glass building is the home of the City Library of Westerstede (*Stadtbücherei Westerstede*) in Schleswig-Holstein. Approximately 25,000 media are on display over 550 m². The children's library has North Sea motifs with a lighthouse and raft. – Photo: J. Feist, ekz

### Public Libraries maintained by the Churches

Considering that just over half of all German local authorities boast at least one public library, the 3,329 Catholic, 769 Protestant and 91 libraries (locations) run by other institutions play a significant role alongside the 4,930 local authority libraries (figures from 31/12/2015). Almost without exception, however, these church public libraries are located in the old (Western) federal states. In spite of their large numbers, it must be remembered that they lag far behind the municipal libraries not only regarding holdings, acquisitions, budgets and circulation figures but also with respect to opening hours and expenditure on staff. More than 98% of all church-run public libraries are managed by voluntary staff. As far as literature provision and activities aimed at encouraging reading among children and young people are concerned, they nevertheless have an important role to play, especially in communities lacking a local municipal library.

The Protestant and Catholic Churches regard their library work to a large extent as part of their local community work and as a cultural activity. The public church library (*kirchliche Öffentliche Bibliothek* – KÖB) is intended to encourage communication, offer guidance on questions of faith and give practical support in promoting of reading and media education.

The activities of the Catholic libraries are closely linked to the Borromäus Society (*Borromäusverein* – BV), in Bavaria to the St. Michael's Association (*St. Michaelsbund*) in Munich). The BV was founded in 1844, and also provides a Bonn-based book and media mail order and book review service for public libraries. Until 2003, it also maintained a state-recognized college for public librarianship and a central library there. In 2017 the *ekz* Library Service replaced *borro Medien* as library suppli-

er to the diocesan libraries in all federal states except Bavaria. The quarterly journal *Biblio Theke* is the leading publication produced by the BV in cooperation with the Catholic Conference and often includes the special supplement *Leselust* (joy of reading). Alongside articles and reports with a literary focus, contributions on library practice, and reports on cultural politics the journal also contains information and advice on library and media work. The BV and the St. Michael's Association also publish the quarterly review catalogue *medienprofile* for collection development.

Responsible for coordinating the work of the Protestant libraries is the umbrella organisation *eliport*—the Protestant literature gateway, formerly the German Association of Protestant Libraries (*Deutscher Verband Evangelischer Büchereien* – DVEB) in Göttingen. All these umbrella organizations work closely with the ten Protestant book centres run by the state church offices and the 15 Catholic book centres in the dioceses. Whereas national conventions and their accompanying annual conferences encourage cooperation, provide guidance on projects and initiatives, and ensure compliance with library standards, regional interdenominational state-level working parties (such as those in North Rhine-Westphalia) provide a platform for communication and specialist interchange.

### Special Areas of Public Librarianship

#### Children's and Young People's Libraries

Because of the particular social, educational and political importance of library work for children and young people in key areas such as encouraging children to read, helping them to enjoy good literature and teaching them media literacy skills, all public libraries give this target user group their special attention. Children and young people up to the age of 14 use the library much more intensively than any other group in the population and in many cities there is a special children's and young people's library, or at any rate a corresponding department within the public library.

For some time now librarians have been focusing on the four- to twelve-year-olds,

and developing children's libraries (*Kinderbibliotheken*) or children's departments (*Kinderabteilungen*) especially for this age group. At first libraries combined their services for children and young people, catering for the literature and media demands of the under-sixteen's. The trend is clearly heading in the direction of separate libraries or zones for the older youngsters. The same goes for the children's departments. Alongside the books and magazines, young library visitors will find an increasingly number of special zones for all kinds of digital media, including electronic gaming consoles for playing, "chilling out", "chatting", working, learning and keeping up to date. Nowadays furniture and fittings in library areas for children and young people, or for the storage of various media formats, are much more colourful, individual and bolder in design than in the past. Activities for children and young people form an important part of the events programme and public relations agenda in the public library sector. In 2015 public libraries organized around 371,000 events (2009:



The children's library of the City Library of Bernburg on the Saale (Saxony-Anhalt) was completed in 2000 and houses around 14,000 media. It was furnished with great imagination and an eye for detail as an adventure reading area. The total library holdings comprise around 65,000 media. – Photo: J. Feist, ekz





The International Youth Library (*Internationale Jugendbibliothek* – IJB), founded in 1948 and housed in Blutenburg Palace in Munich (Bavaria), has the world's most comprehensive holdings of international literature for children and young people: over 600,000 books in 130 languages published over a period of four centuries. The Library's varied programme and range of publications form a unique access point for this literature and a scholarship program provides financial support for research and international exchange. 40,000 children and adults visit the Library each year. Every two years authors from all over the world are invited to participate in the renowned White Ravens Festival. – Photo: IJB

304,000) throughout Germany, of which about two-thirds targeted the 4–16 age group. Press publicity, marketing and event management have emerged as core activities essential to community identity but also requiring additional library staff training.

The idea of Summer Reading Clubs originated in the USA and has enjoyed increasing popularity in Germany since 2002. The public libraries in North Rhine-Westphalia, the first state federal to try out the idea, were joined by those in 10 further states in Summer Reading Club projects under a variety of names. Known as the “Julius Club” in Lower Saxony, “Book Summer RLP” in Rhineland-Palatinate, “Summer Holiday Reading Club” in Bavaria and “Book Summer XXL” in Saxony-Anhalt the programmes endeavour to generate a thirst for books and an appetite for reading with events like “*Bock auf Buch*” (In the Mood for a Book) and “*Cool am Pool*” (Cool at the Pool), whereby slogans such as “*Abenteuer beginnen im Kopf*” (Adventures Begin in Your Head) “*Beim Lesen tauche ich ab*” (Dive Into a Book) or “*53 Grad* –

*Dein Sommer*” (53 Degrees—Your Summer) the target audience is clearly the 6–16 age group. At the end of the action tens of thousands of participants celebrated its success by regularly flocking to the over 1,000 parties held at the participating libraries, where certificates were awarded and gifts presented. Most clubs were initiated and organised by the state and church library service centres or library headquarters in cooperation with local libraries.

Around 100,000 children and young people borrowed more than 575,000 books from 950 libraries during the school summer holidays in 2016, rating them by various criteria. In 2008 the

network Summer Reading Clubs (*Lesecclubs im Sommer*) was founded to encourage the nationwide exchange of ideas. In 2016 libraries recorded an average of 220 participants who each read six books and of whom 60% were girls.

In spite of the astonishingly wide range of activities on offer, many public libraries are still finding it difficult to persuade young people to become regular library users, especially boys between the of 13 and 16. Experience has shown that young people are happy to learn from their coeval peers and are willing to participate in creative activities if the right encouragement is offered; they are technology and media-savvy and at home in social networks and with modern hardware and software. Libraries try to entice youngsters back into the library by providing appropriate media and activities in age-related, attractive and colourful surroundings with the emphasis on “cool” design. Young people are often encouraged to take an active part in media acquisition or to help decide on furniture and decorations in the hope of re-awakening their interest in the library.

### School Libraries

Libraries and schools have long been closely linked despite the fact that cooperation between schools and their libraries on the one hand, and public and academic libraries on the other, has been sadly neglected for decades. The reasons for this neglect are manifold, with both schools and libraries bearing their share of the blame. After the shock of the PISA study in 2000, numerous projects were initiated to alleviate the problems caused by the two sides working both alongside and against each other. It became clear that in many areas schools and libraries—whether public or academic—were often working towards the same educational goals; both sides could considerably improve their standing by collaborating more closely. As schools gradually became all-day institutions—a nationwide trend that started at the turn of the century—so the need also increased for attractive multi-media learning spaces suitable for active and independent learning.

The educational and political mandate of the public libraries is at its most obvious in the

close relationships they cultivate with schools and school libraries. In spite of the widely recognized educational and political significance of school libraries, afforded additional weight by the Unesco manifesto “The School Library in Teaching and Learning for All” in 2000, the equipment, furnishing and staffing of many school libraries in Germany is still woefully unsatisfactory. Although general awareness of the library’s presence in daily school life is increasing, the library is still often sidelined in practice. The importance of the school library, or its more modern counterpart the school media centre, is not called into question per se, but unfavourable parameters have resulted in a marked regional unevenness of the school library landscape when compared to the efficient countrywide systems of the Scandinavian countries, the Netherlands, Great Britain or South Tirol in Italy.

Many specialists compare school libraries to developing countries, despite the fact that the former are experiencing a certain upswing in the wake of the various PISA studies and the introduction of all-day schools. Unfortunately, there are very few statistics and studies providing reliable information on the current state and potential of school libraries. The mere existence of a school library does not throw any light on its quality, since the spectrum of performance indicators is extremely broad. Some of the recent modern “lighthouse” libraries co-exist peacefully alongside ill-equipped and out-of-date school libraries and book corners often dating back to the 1970s and 1980s.

A critical examination of the current German school library landscape reveals its still patchy structure; in federal states with adequately equipped library service centres, motivated working groups or in cities with School Library Offices (*Schulbibliothekarische Arbeitsstellen*) developments are impressive. In practice there are no binding standards governing the equipment of a school library, but a body of reliable guidelines, reference works and articles has nevertheless been widely adopted.

The main problem is that there is no general educational, political or legal framework of binding and comprehensive regulations. A constant impediment is the unclear administrative



classification of the school library. If, as has hitherto been the case, libraries are defined as purely administrative entities, then they are regarded as the responsibility of the school funding body, i.e. the municipality or the county, as are buildings or maintenance staff. This means that at federal state level school libraries are assigned to the ministry responsible for culture, in the same way as public libraries. In reality school libraries ought to be assigned to the Ministry of Education since they also contribute to the educational and didactic work of their schools. Many projects have failed because the two departments kept passing the buck.

The *dbv* Commission “Library and School” (*Bibliothek und Schule*) complements the activities of the regional commissions and working groups by giving library development a welcome boost at federal level, its most important achievement being the creation of the web portal *Schulmediothek.de* (school media centre) hosted by the network portal German Education Server (*Deutscher Bildungsserver*) of the German Institute for International Educational Research (*Deutsches Institut für Internationale Pädagogische Forschung* – DIPF). The portal provides access to comprehensive information and useful guidelines for school libraries. Other promising developments are the School Library Service Models (*Modelle schulbibliothekarischer Versorgung*), plans for a curriculum, the editorial column School Libraries Update (*Schulbibliothek aktuell*) in the journal *kjlm*, formerly *Beiträge Jugendliteratur und Medien*, and the advent of the first subject-specific training course.

School libraries can be part of all kinds of organisational structures. If the library is run as an independent unit within the school, then the school itself is responsible for funding the library’s service from its own budget or from donations and grants from a Friends Association or booster club. A frequent alternative is the integration of the school library into an existing public library, utilising the same building and infrastructure, either as a public library using rooms in the school (model 1) or as a school using a nearby public library (model 2). Apart from the shared premises the main characteristic of the second model (where the school uses

the public library) is that the school library is funded by the public library, freeing the school from staffing or other costs while allowing it to benefit from the proximity of the public library. This model also ensures a reasonable degree of compliance with library standards, whereas an independent school library run by teachers tends to develop a certain amount of “individual creativity” and can only offer a limited

The school library or school media centre’s systematically indexed media stock is fully adapted to the teaching curricula and can be used both for subject-based teaching and media skills instruction. The library’s stimulating environment is an ideal learning space for project teams and workgroups – and can also be a great place to relax in free time, as can be seen here in the Media Centre of the secondary schools in the Heinz Engler Forum in Biberach an der Riss (Baden-Württemberg). The Centre is part of the City Library Media and Information Centre and provides pupils and teachers with access to around 12,000 media units spread over an area of 300 square metres. – Photo: J. Feist, ekz



range of services. Cooperative models are also becoming more prominent, with teaching methods using the internet and digital media to encourage collaboration with district, city and regional media and image centres. The most common form of school library is the independent type, widespread in larger schools and school centres, while the combined school and city public library model is usually found in large cities.

Broad estimates indicate that about 18–20%, or about 8,500 of the approximately 44,300 general and vocational schools in Germany, have a school library or reading corner. Seen objectively, at the very most 2,500 schools (5%) have well-equipped libraries, and professionally trained librarians are in short supply nearly everywhere. The situation is particularly critical in the primary, middle and higher second-

ary schools, hardly any of which have libraries. Only the grammar schools have any kind of adequate library provision. Only in very few cases, mainly in new grammar (*Gymnasien*), comprehensive (*Gesamtschulen*) and all-day schools (*Ganztagsschulen*), is there any kind of adequate compliance with space and media provision standards. Over 90% of the work involved in managing and maintaining school libraries is carried out by part-time teachers and volunteer parents or pupils. Occasionally staff may be supplied by job creation schemes or the Federal Volunteer Service (*Bundesfreiwilligendienst*).

There is general agreement among experts on the most important services school libraries and media centres should be expected to provide, always presupposing adequate funding, staff and premises: reading encouragement schemes, information centres, teaching rooms, communication platforms, cultural centres (including media production centres) and leisure activities. There are various descriptive service models and it is often not easy to distinguish between them. These models describe school libraries as “teaching spaces”, “learning and reading spaces”, “self-learning centres”, “social spaces”, “school-free spaces” or as “local libraries”. With the rise of all-day schools and regular afternoon teaching schedules the idea of the school library as an institution which can be used for learning and for relaxation and supervision has come increasingly popular.

One of the drawbacks is that library staff are often insufficiently qualified. There is a lack of appropriate training at national level, though a few federal states have initiated day courses, school library conferences or regional workshops, following suggestions submitted by library service centre projects (Bavaria, Lower Saxony, Rhineland-Palatinate), regional working groups at association level (Hesse, Brandenburg, North Rhine-Westphalia) or school library service centres (Cologne, Frankfurt am Main, Hamburg). School library-related subject matter seldom finds its way into teacher training curricula. The *dbv* Commission “Library and School” has long demanded that basic school library knowledge be integrated into teacher training courses. Teachers responsible for running school libraries should have their teaching



hours appropriately reduced, or temporary school librarians should be employed to help during the initial establishment or reorganisation of the library.

In recent years the regional associations of the *dbv* have signed cooperative agreements with the Ministries of Education in 14 federal states, thus putting collaboration between public libraries and (all-day) schools on a firmer footing; at regional level this has stimulated political discussion on the significance of library work, reading and media skills, and digital literacy. In 2015 the *dbv* published its latest statement on the contribution libraries make to those areas detailed in the Federal Government's Digital Agenda. The report "Reading and Learning 3.0: Media training belongs in the school library!" (*Lesen und Lernen 3.0: Medienbildung in der Schulbibliothek verankern!*), also known as the "Frankfurt Statement", emphasises the particular role played by school media centres and makes concrete reference to the resolution adopted by the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education on 8/3/2012 on Media Training in Schools (*Medienbildung in der Schule*). The Statement focuses on ways of teaching and improving media literacy, since without the associated knowledge and skills it is impossible to behave in an appropriate, autonomous and responsible manner in a world dominated by digital media. Three principles—the school library as media centre, as learning environment and the qualified school librarian as media educator—form the core of this catalogue of educational and political demands.

The constitutional reform envisaged for 2017 by the Federal Government and the Federal States aims at improving the government's ability to provide funding within the school sector and may possibly involve extending the scope of hitherto isolated funding measures such as the IZBB programme "Education and Support—the Future" (*Zukunft Bildung und Betreuung*) to include nursery school, libraries and adult education centres. Attention is increasingly focusing on improving reading skills, particularly with the help of digital media.

## Music Libraries

The changes taking place in the digital society and their effects on libraries are particularly evident when we look at music libraries. The attractive new music libraries such as those founded in recent years in Stuttgart, Essen, Nuremberg, Wiesbaden or Detmold cannot conceal the fact that the whole sector is faced with formidable challenges. In spite of the 88 public music libraries and 929 municipal schools of music in Germany there is no question of them providing comprehensive music teaching and performing opportunities. In view of the decline in the circulation figures for physical media there is a pressing need to develop new ideas for the continuing development of music library services.

Although there are some independent music libraries, most are departments, collections or special areas within the larger city libraries or state or regional libraries and schools of music, with the libraries of the television and radio broadcasting companies also falling into this category. Some are members of the International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Documentation Centres (AIBM). Whereas the academic and institutional music libraries have a clearly defined function and an appropriate legal foundation, the public music libraries are an optional service provided by the municipalities and subject to the will of the funding body.

Music libraries not only collect and index printed music, books on music and sound recordings; they also digitize these holdings and make electronic resources and services available to their customers in digital libraries or internal institutional repositories. The most comprehensive music collections are to be found in the large state and regional libraries, such as in Berlin, Munich, Dresden and Karlsruhe.

The Virtual Subject Library *ViFaMusik*, a DFG-funded project initiated in 2005 and jointly administered by the Bavarian State Library and the State Institute for Music Research (*Staatliches Institut für Musikforschung*) in Berlin, provides a platform for digital music resources. Included are the catalogues of all the large European music libraries in Berlin,



Leipzig, London, Munich and Vienna as well as music bibliographies and international source indexes such as the *Répertoire International des Sources Musicales* (RISM) in addition to digitized printed music and sound recordings.

Within the remit of the new DFG programme Specialised Information Services for Research (*Fachinformationsdienste für die Wissenschaft*),

Music rooms and digital pianos are standard in many big city music library departments, as can be seen here in Mannheim City Library. The Library was founded in 1914 as an independent unit; later it was merged with the City Library to form the "People's Library and Music Library", housed in the historic Dalberghaus building. Holdings comprise around 25,000 books, music works, journals, CDs, DVDs, CD-ROMs, audio books and music films on DVD. Three special subject collections "Mannheim School", "Mannheim Music" and "Women Composers" include valuable rara such as early printed works, manuscripts and images. Parts of the "Mannheim School" collections are available in digital form.

– Photo: D. Jakob

The German Music Archive in the fourth extension of the German National Library, opened in 2010 in Leipzig (Saxony), acts as Germany's long-term musical memory bank. Its particular value lies in the comprehensiveness of its collections, which include many unique individual items. Although the Music Reading Room houses a reference collection of 5,000 volumes, it is less a place to read than to listen to music, providing access to two million audio recordings. For special acoustic requirements there is a playback studio situated within the exhibition area. – Photo: Kunstmann

the old Special Subject Field (*Sondersammelgebiet* – SSG) Musicology, allocated to the BSB in 1949, has been reorganised and renamed "Specialised Information Service Musicology." Further data sources and content will be added to the *ViFaMusik* to form a European music catalogue.

Most music libraries in the public library sector have reacted flexibly to change in society. Users of music libraries are no different to the users of other library services in their desire for media and information to be available in electronic form on their PC, tablet or smartphones wherever they are and whenever they wish. Music libraries have hitherto only partially been able to fulfil this wish, since many recording companies have not made the pre-requisite lending licences available to libraries. For this reason many public libraries subscribe to the digital lending platforms *Onleihe* and *Ciando Library*, which make available sound recordings (almost exclusively in the form of packages for classical, jazz and pop music) and music literature (music teaching titles, biographies



| Printed music holdings | Printed music circulation | Secondary literature holdings | Secondary literature circulation | CD holdings   | CD circulation | Total media holdings | Total circulation | Acquisitions budget |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| (media units)          | (media units)             | (media units)                 | (media units)                    | (media units) | (media units)  |                      | (media units)     | (in Euro)           |
| 859,500                | 827,400                   | 266,800                       | 291,700                          | 577,600       | 2,828,600      | 1,871,100            | 4,196,300         | 781,800             |

Performance figures for the 44 participating music libraries (Source: German Library Statistics DBS 2015, updated to 31/12/2015)

of musicians, introductions to musical works) as part of their service.

The DBS 2015 (31/12/2015) lists 44 music libraries returning statistical data, nearly all of which are part of one of the larger city library system. The following table shows how well-used the library stock is:

Public libraries also provide facilities for active musicians. For example Essen City Library’s Music Library offers “music packs” for those working with school classes and children’s groups, coordinates the acquisition of teaching materials with the School of Music and organises joint taster courses for beginners with the adult education centre. Other libraries organise sing-along concerts for families and the elderly, make rooms available to young performing musicians, and include concerts and music performances in their cultural and public relations programmes.

### Libraries and the Promotion of Reading

The results of the PISA studies from 2000 helped to establish the promotion of reading as a core activity in German public libraries.

The terms *reading promotion* (in particular *reading skills* and *reading performance*) have become fashionable in the past few years, yet are defined and used in quite different ways by teachers and librarians. The English word *literacy* is often used by teachers, parents, educationalists and librarians to mean those skills associated with reading, writing and narrative culture—in short, the ability to handle the written and spoken language.

“Promotion of reading” is generally used as a somewhat vague collective term for a variety of methods intended to promote and improve reading fluency or text comprehension. The idea is that it should stimulate reading and stabilize reading behaviour, whereas *literary education* focuses on the accessibility of lyrical text and content. *Reading practice* is centred on the acquisition of skills and strategies facilitating the act of reading and working with all kinds of text content. So-called *pre-skills* are often an important pre-requisite of learning to write. Such skills can be further honed by libraries, for example in pre-school programmes involving activities such as rhyme, singing and finger games, or leafing through picture-books together and reading stories aloud. This kind of activity complements children’s development at home and affords them their first encounters with reading and books. Pointing with their fingers, speaking aloud and repeating words help them to connect pictures



The programme *Lesestart – Drei Meilensteine* (Starting to Read –Three Milestones), seen here in the inviting children’s department of the City Library in Wismar (Mecklenburg-Vorpommern) on the poster next to various book bins full of stories for reading aloud is one of the country’s most successful promotion projects of the past few years.  
– Both photos: J. Seefeldt

with language or the printed word. At the same time it reinforces the reading promotion work of the nursery schools so that children from homes with few books come into contact with literature and deficits can be dealt with. The reading promotion programmes offered by many public libraries in large and medium-sized cities are continually expanding, but there is often a lack of specially training staff and suitable rooms for them to be able to offer these groups on a regular basis.

Nowadays the home, the school and the library are seen as the three most important facilitators of reading and writing skills. Whereas the obligatory reading instruction in school, especially in primary school, is aimed at making sure children possess basic reading skills, reading promotion tries to exert a positive influence on their motivation to read and on their reading habits. Originally reading promotion in schools concentrated on children who clearly still had problems with reading even after initial instruction in reading and writing. Now, however, it has been extended to cover all children at all levels and in all schools who

need help with their reading and literary socialisation. As far as reading promotion in primary schools is concerned, it has been shown that most promotional activities are designed to improve spelling, not reading. But once reading itself has become automatic, independent book reading can lead to an improvement of literacy by bundling sub-skills.

In the light of this knowledge, public libraries are in a unique position to provide suitable reading materials since they are able to draw on book and media holdings specially tailored to age and development-specific needs. In the past decade and a half libraries have evolved a whole range of pro-active activities designed to make their holdings known to a wider public and entice various target groups into the library. These programmes are complemented by the efforts of the library service centres, which





have developed nationwide projects either themselves or in cooperation with others, and are designed to support libraries or encourage them to participate in collective activities. The main goal of the reading promotion activities offered by public libraries is the improvement of reading motivation and reading ability, leading to an increase in imagination, creativity and concentration.

Space does not permit more than a cursory mention of a small number of the many examples of these activities. Ultimately it is a case of getting children interested in the library by showing them how to find information, answers to their homework problems or things to do in their leisure time:

- regular story hours for children aged from three to six, or from six to ten
- picture-book cinema sessions for the over-fives
- public readings and meet-and-greet sessions with authors
- handicraft afternoons using ideas in books
- modern methods such as interactive board-stories, social reading and transmedia storytelling
- reading workshops and literature discussion groups for various ages
- writing workshops
- Reading Nights with school classes or mixed groups of children and young people
- provision of special reading boxes or media blocks with fiction or non-fiction suitable for different school classes
- media exhibitions for children
- help from librarians when setting up school libraries
- various forms of guided tours for school classes, with an adventure, subject or information-based focus
- setting up a swap-shop, reading corner or bookshelf in the classroom

Libraries pay especial attention to gender-sensitive methods of promoting reading which can be implemented when various partners come together and complement each other, and which are addressed to parents, educators, teachers, libraries, bookshops, publishers and

ultimately politicians. Research studies show that gender-based prejudices can influence not only the academic achievements of girls and boys but also their choice of career. This involves neither maintaining out-dated ideas on gender roles or levelling down. It is important to find out what the individual needs and interests of boys and girls are while also taking account of their preferences. It is generally recognised that while boys need their own special form of reading promotion it is also important to encourage girls in order to recognise when they show interest in subjects not typically classed as feminine.

Modern reading promotion is focusing increasingly on digital and multi-media programmes alongside conventional book-based media. Examples are hybrid picture-books which work on the lines of Augmented Reality (AR). They let children of nursery-school age experience the traditional picture-book with text in a rather different way via various apps on their tablet or smartphone, i.e. with sound and video clips. Older children have the chance of using apps to create their own books or can take advantage of social reading platforms to share texts.

Some time ago the Federal Government augmented the state-funded measures with its own support for the promotion of reading. This was mainly in the form of cooperation involving the Federal Ministry of Education and Research, the Reading Foundation (*Stiftung Lesen*), the German Library Association, the Borromäus Society, the evangelical literature portal, the St. Michael's Association and the Convention of Library Service Centres.

In 2009 the nine-year project *Lesestart – Drei Meilensteine* (Starting to Read—Three Milestones) was launched by the Reading Foundation with funding from the BMBF as the first nationwide reading promotion programme. It consists of three interdependent phases designed to help families with small children, from birth until they start school. The free *Lesestart* sets, containing an age-appropriate children's book together with advice and tips on reading aloud and storytelling in a home environment, are at the heart of the project; the idea is to make sure reading and storytelling is firmly established in everyday life and

to encourage children to read of their own accord. 4.5 million children received *Lesestart* sets from 2010 onwards: the first set from their local paediatrician's practice, the second from their local library and from 2016–2018 the third and final set from their primary school. An evaluation returned such positive results that the Reading Foundation and their partners have been motivated to make the programme permanent.

The project “Reading is Strength: Reading and Digital Media” (*Lesen macht stark: Lesen und digitale Medien*), also jointly funded by the BMBF and the dbv in partnership with the Digital Opportunities Foundation (*Stiftung Digital Chancen*), aims to create more than 350 “Alliances for Education” (*Bündnisse für Bildung*) in 16 federal states between 2013 and 2017. All the projects promoting reading and media literacy have focused on autonomous and creative media use by the young participants, and all activities begin with them reading a text themselves, or listening to it being read aloud, before continuing with the help of digital media, social media applications, gaming, geo- or edu-caching and film and drama projects. Local volunteers help to support their full-time alliance partners. The Digital Opportunities Foundation ran a free training campaign to help participating volunteers obtain the qualifications needed to use the new media forms.

### **The Intercultural Work of the Public Libraries**

Public libraries have also reacted to the large numbers of refugees who have sought asylum in Germany since 2015. On launching its programme “National Action Plan On Integration” (*Nationaler Aktionsplan Integration*) three years earlier in 2012 the Federal Government had described the integration of people with migration backgrounds as one of the “key tasks” of our time, not merely because demographic development patterns would inevitably lead to problems in a constantly ageing society. Since then debates on integration, inclusion and participation held at federal, state and local level have covered topics ranging from the involvement of all social strata in the inclusion



The currently biennial International Children's Book Exhibition (IKiBu) has been held since 1971 in Duisburg City Library and is a showcase project for intercultural work. Its centrepiece is the exhibition of literature for children and young people, with new titles, nominations and award-winners of the German Youth Book Prize, author readings and topics of international interest. – Photo: krischerfotografie Duisburg

process, and doubts on the willingness of some migrant groups to integrate, through to early language learning in children, the future lack of skilled workers or the equal participation of migrants. As early as 2008 IFLA's manifesto on the multicultural library had already called on libraries to ensure accessibility for all members of society. Reading promotion and especially the acquisition of the national language of the country of residence were seen as the important “key” to successful integration.

Established in 2009, the dbv Commission for Intercultural Library Services (*Kommission Interkulturelle Bibliotheksarbeit*) explores ways of adapting library services to the needs of users with a migration background. The Commission utilises talks and conference discussion panels to raise awareness whilst encouraging the development of intercultural services and providing assistance, evaluation and documentary support. At the same time the Commission screens potential project funding sources, has evolved library standards for the provision of intercultural service and made recommendations on the shared use of holdings, the networking of acquisition channels and consortium options.



The City and Anniversary Festivals organised by Heidelberg City Library in June 2016 to celebrate the 50th anniversary of the inauguration of the new building in Poststrasse provide a welcome opportunity for using cultural library work to attract people from all social strata and groups into the libraries. – Photo: Heidelberg City Library

Most libraries see those with a migration background as a new and important target group, especially if they are refugees or asylum seekers. Despite the not inconsiderable practical problems and difficulties, intercultural library work is generally becoming increasingly important. The role of the library as an institution willing and able to make a tangible contribution to the integration of minority groups is undoubtedly being seen in a new light.

The extent to which integration work has increased is clear from the many ongoing projects and measures. Many libraries have developed new ideas for intercultural activities and receive political backup from local authority committees. In some West German cities the proportion of inhabitants with migration backgrounds can be as high as 25%, including as many as 50 different nationalities and language groups. In addition to special tours of the library and story hours for children and

young people it has become almost a matter of course to issue free library cards to refugees. Other measures include multilingual book packages and media boxes for parents and children, some of which are distributed to refugee accommodation centres; low-threshold language courses offer a first taste of the German language and culture, often with additional staff supplied by friends' associations or the local adult education centre. Libraries are functioning as public spaces for social interchange as users take advantage of internet workstations and WiFi networks to maintain contact with family and friends abroad. Picture-books, bi- and multilingual literature for young people and adults, stories and non-fiction in simple

language, dictionaries, English-language titles and foreign newspapers have all proved helpful for those recently arrived in Germany. Contact and networking with institutions offering local and regional support has intensified. Much valuable financial support is received via donations from a wide range of partners and sponsors such as active civic trusts and savings bank foundations (*Sparkassen-Stiftung*), so-called service clubs such as the Lions Club, Rotary, Kiwanis and Zonta, or the German child welfare organisation *Deutsches Kinderhilfswerk* and the German lotteries, including social lotteries like *Aktion Mensch*.

The Goethe Institute in Germany is also active in this area, organising free foundation-level German language courses or providing videos for loan showing how to deal with local authority procedures, everyday situations or job-search support. In 2010 more than 300 book packages containing several thousand German-language books for children and young people translated into Arabic were donated to libraries, which duly incorporated and catalogued them. The Arabic translations and editions were published with the support of a translation funding programme.

### Library Services for Special User Groups

Integrative library work for *special user groups*, sometimes known as *social library work* but nowadays more often known as *target-group orientated or target-group specific library work*, is dedicated to providing special services to persons with specific disabilities or who are in a difficult personal situation. As not-for-

Like many other public libraries, the Main City Library in Bremen has equipped different areas to cater for special user groups. The young people's library "Teen Spirit" was designed with the target group in mind and with the help of young people's focus groups. The special shelving system by the library suppliers ekz and trendy furniture help to create an atmosphere which encourages the youthful users to spend time in the library, either indulging in a little "cool" surfing at the eight PC and internet terminals, listening to music CDs or watching videos, or playing computer games at one of the eleven multimedia computers. – Photo: Bremen City Library

profit institutions, libraries are committed to serving all members of society and to championing equal opportunities, integration and educational equality. This is one sphere of library work particularly adversely affected by the cutbacks implemented by the public and church funding institutions in the 1990s and which have often led to services being heavily reduced or even discontinued. However this area does seem to be experiencing a slight, if cyclical, growth in popularity thanks to increased political interest in intercultural and demographic issues.

Many specialists have long been calling for measures to increase the social and political acceptance of this kind of library work and are demanding better funding to ensure that these facilities are available to all. Initially, target-group orientated library work was narrowly defined as the provision of "books on wheels" services to the handicapped at home or to patients in hospital; later prison services were included in this definition. There has since been a distinct broadening of the term itself and the goals associated with it. The category "people with special needs" has long included the elderly, the socially and physically disadvantaged, refugees (in temporary centres and reception camps) and persons with educational or language disadvantages or migration backgrounds, all of whom are now targeted for special library and media provision services. Libraries are rising to the challenge of making







The West German Audio Library for the Blind e.V. in Münster lends CD-audiobooks in DAISY format on all subjects to the blind and sight-impaired. Physically handicapped users unable to use conventional books are also welcome to use the service. The WBH offers subscriptions to five DAISY audio journals. The website explains that audiobooks can be downloaded or saved to memory cards or USB thumb drives submitted by the user. Opening the website triggers the automatic text-to-speech function which accompanies the whole process from login to download and catalogue search. – (Screenshot [www.wbh-online.de](http://www.wbh-online.de))

an active contribution towards implementing the provisions of the National Action Plans for Integration (2007 to 2015) or the General Equal Treatment Act (*Allgemeines Gleichbehandlungsgesetz* – AGG).

There are estimated to be around 7.5 million German-speaking functionally illiterate citizens in Germany, which means that nearly every tenth adult who is fit for work has not learned to read and write properly. In 2017 the Federal Government will be asking clubs, associations and employers to carefully reach out to these people. Several federal states are making efforts to improve the situation through action plans and campaigns, with particular attention focused on the Alpha Points project *Lesen macht Leben leichter* (Reading Makes Life Easier) currently being jointly developed in cooperation with 13 adult education centres and 17 public libraries in Schleswig-Holstein. Alpha Points are information points located in libraries and adult education centres and equipped

with notebooks, laptops, books and brochures designed to improve access to specialised subject information, to provide information on practical courses and media and to offer low-threshold self-learning motivation.

There are just under a dozen libraries for the blind (*Blindenbibliotheken*), providing the 165,000 blind and around a million visually-impaired people in Germany with information and literature services; most are constituted on a private law basis, some with Braille holdings but the majority in the form of audio libraries. Among the largest Braille or audio libraries for the blind are the German Central Library for the Blind (*Deutsche Zentralbücherei für Blinde* – DZB) in Leipzig, the German Library for the Blind (*Deutsche Blinden-Bibliothek* – DBB) in Marburg, the Bavarian Audio Library for the Blind (*Bayerische Blindenhörbücherei e.V.* – BBH) in Munich, the Hamburg Libraries for the Blind (*Hamburger Blindenbüchereien*), the West German Audio Library for the Blind (*Westdeutsche*

*Blindenhörbücherei e.V.*) in Münster and the German Catholic Library for the Blind (*Deutsche Katholische Blindenbücherei*) in Bonn. These libraries produce and circulate (electronically or by post) books, periodicals and texts both in audio and in traditional Braille formats, which they produce in their own studios in cooperation with a number of associations. Their total holdings comprise about 250,000 sound recordings (audio books and audio journals on audio-cassette or compact disc in DAISY format) and 160,000 books, periodicals and music books in Braille. DAISY, which stands for Digital Accessible Information System, is the name of a worldwide standard for navigable and barrier-free multimedia documents. Audio books can now be downloaded from the library sites or saved to memory cards or thumb drives supplied by the user.

Most items are still borrowed by post, which continues to be free of charge for materials for the blind. The wide range of services provided by the libraries for the blind are complemented by those of the church libraries, the special departments for the blind available in some metropolitan libraries, digital text-to-speech transformers (e.g. in the German National Library), and other facilities. In 2004 libraries and associations in Germany joined forces as the Media Society for the Blind and Sight-Impaired (*Mediengesellschaft für blinde und sehbehinderte Menschen e.V.* – Medibus).

In 2016 about 33% of Germany's around 1,960 hospitals and clinics were state-run while 35% were run by charitable institutions and 22% by private enterprise. While the number of hospitals has been continually declining for years, the number of privately funded clinics is growing. According to the HBZ library search engine there are 422 hospital or patients' libraries registered nationwide with the service in Cologne, of which 222, or about 11% of all clinics, supply statistical feedback to the German Library Statistics and can be regarded as active. Hospital or patients' libraries (*Patientenbibliotheken*) provide literature and other media services mainly to patients during their stay, though they also serve hospital staff.

Their holdings, averaging 6,000 to 8,000 books, journals and audio-visual media, and the advisory services of their full and part-time

staff are seen as part of a holistic concept of health care designed to promote the patients' rapid recovery and to meet their need for information about their illness. The "Guidelines for Patients' Libraries" (*Richtlinien für Patientenbibliotheken*) have established an important professional basis for the work of librarians in hospitals. In the wake of recently introduced legal standards on hospital quality control and the stipulated certification procedure associated with them, patients' libraries perceive themselves as an important factor in this quality control procedure.

Around a third of hospital or patients' libraries are members of Section 8 of the German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V.*); the Section's Working Group on Patients' Libraries works together with the evangelical literature portal and the Catholic Borromäus Association to organise longer training courses in Hofgeismar (Hesse). The conference agendas are compiled to take account of current trends in the health and library sectors; problems of stock development and structure are treated alongside lobbying in the hospital or the benefits of literature therapy (bibliotherapy), for which there is admittedly no firm scientific evidence.

A distinction should be made between hospital libraries serving only patients and forming part of the public library network, and special medical libraries (*medizinische Fachbibliotheken*) serving the clinic physicians, which belong to the category of scientific special libraries. New standards for these libraries were introduced in 2004, outlining goals and guidelines for buildings, budgeting, staffing and other resources.

Around 220 German prisons maintain small prison libraries (*Gefängnisbibliotheken*), also called prisoners' libraries, with holdings of between 1,000 to 10,000 media units; they have been the responsibility of the Federal states since the federal reform of 2006. Qualified staff are employed by only three federal states; as a rule a prison officer is in overall charge of library work in the prison, while the inmates are responsible for the main day-to-day running of the library. In North Rhine-Westphalia there are special Library Service Centres in each of the prisons in Münster and Cologne, while Ham-

burg prison libraries receive support from the special service centre Prison Libraries of the Book Halls (*Fachstelle Justizanstaltsbüchereien der Bücherhallen*) and in the city state of Bremen the prison library is a branch of Bremen City Library.

Prison libraries are for entertainment, leisure and further education purposes and form part of the re-socialisation process. Their media lending service not only provides prisoners access to information but also enables them to take part indirectly in the life of the society of which they are part. By teaching information and media literacy like all other libraries, prison libraries help to ensure that inmates do not lose contact with society. They often support prison alphabetisation programmes, acting as cultural facilitators by offering creative writing workshops or literature groups. Ultimately one of the main purposes of a prison library is to ease the re-integration of prisoners into the social and work environment on their release. The fact that nearly 90% of regular inmates and up to 100% of juvenile offenders take advantage of the library service shows how important it is.

Exchange of views and opinions among prison librarians takes place partly at federal state level. The association Friends of Prison Libraries (*Förderverein Gefangenenbüchereien e.V.*), founded in 2006, organised conferences for employees of prison and youth offenders' institutions as part of the Frankfurt Book Fair in 2010, 2012 and 2016. The association acts in parallel with the *dbv's* small Working Party on Prison Libraries to promote the further development of media services for those in prison or detention, future goals being the integration of digital media into the libraries' holdings and more cooperation between prison and city libraries.

In 2007 Münster Prison Library was designated "Library of the Year", attracting considerable attention both nationally and internationally. Following the evacuation of Münster prison in July 2016 the library had to be put into storage and it is still uncertain whether it will be re-opened in a renovated building. To raise awareness of the importance of library work behind bars the Friends' Association celebrated its 10th anniversary by launching a nationwide

competition called "Prisoners' and Detainees' Library of the Year 2016"; in 2017 it plans to award this title to five institutions in various federal states. In 2017 Bremen Prison Library was awarded the Library Prize by the VGH Foundation of Lower Saxony.

### Other Libraries

Besides the categories already listed, there are a number of other libraries, comparable in their function to public libraries, but open to a limited group of users only. For instance, in addition to its special military university libraries, the German Federal Armed Forces (*Deutsche Bundeswehr*) maintain numerous smaller "troop libraries" (*Truppenbüchereien*), which provide general information and entertainment for the soldiers, with holdings of audio media and DVDs. The German Army maintains a total of around 100 libraries for the use of its troops.

Only company employees have access to the diminishing number of company works libraries (*Werksbibliotheken*), of which only about 15–20 still exist; their purpose is to provide their users with information on general topics and leisure interests in addition to material for professional training and continuing education purposes and they thus have a quite different function to the company's technical library, which serves the interests of research and development within the company and is classed as a special library.

Picture libraries (*Artotheken*), formerly also known as Graphics Libraries (*Graphotheken*), have a particular place in the hearts of art lovers. Picture lending libraries are maintained by various funding agencies—public and academic libraries, departments of culture, museums, art associations etc. and offer a free or low-cost lending service for paintings or prints of various epochs. Their holdings consist of items owned by, or on loan to, museums or artists. In addition to providing these services they also organise exhibitions, lectures, guided tours and demonstrations of various artistic techniques and activities. The interests of the 120 picture libraries in Germany are represented by the Association of German Picture Libraries (*Artothekenverband Deutschland e.V.*), founded in 2000.



A rare example of a company works library can be found in Burghausen (Bavaria). The company Wacker Chemie AG maintains a works library with holdings of about 40,000 media for its 10,000 employees and their families. The library was endowed in 1921 by the company's founder Alexander Wacker to provide "instruction and entertainment". It is open 19 hours per week, employs three staff members and has a registered circulation of 120,000 items per year (2009).  
– Photo: Wacker AG

### The Information Infrastructure

With the Federal Programme for the Promotion of Information and Documentation, 1974–1977 (*Programm der Bundesregierung zur Förderung von Informations- und Dokumentations- 1974–1977—IuD-Program*) there began the systematic development of a network of information and documentation centres. Since subject-oriented information provision is basically regarded as a commercial undertaking which has to hold its own in the market, the first of these IuD programmes (and to an even greater extent its successors) was seen more as a contribution to the economy than to the advancement of science. Hence these programmes concentrated from the outset on science and engineering.

The most important outcome of the IuD Programmes affecting libraries was the establishment of subject-based information systems (*Fachinformationssysteme* – FIS) together with corresponding subject-based information centres (*Fachinformationszentren* – FIZ) formed by merging already existing institutions. The development of subject-specific databases and the increasing numbers of electronic records led to a rising demand for this literature, especially for journal articles. Initially it was the task of the Central Subject Libraries (*Zentrale Fachbibliotheken*) to provide the documents indexed in the databases of the Fachinformationszentren; today the centres perform part of this function themselves using electronic delivery services. Since this kind of information is a commercial commodity, a charge is made for all these services, from searching to document delivery.

The German Society for Information and Knowledge (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Informations- und Wissen e.V.* – DGI), founded in 1948, forms an important interface between the various information specialists operating in libraries and documentation units; its goal is to define new perspectives for information services and to develop new techniques in knowledge management.

The FIZ Karlsruhe—Leibniz Institute of Information Infrastructure, founded in 1977, is a good example of a renowned institute. It is a recognised non-profit limited company and has been charged with the task of making published scientific information available worldwide and of providing the accompanying services. In order to achieve this, the FIZ Karlsruhe indexes vast amounts of data from a wide range of sources, develops and markets innovative information services and e-research solutions, and conducts its own research projects. As one of the leading non-university institutions within the informational infrastructure, and as member of the Leibniz Association, the FIZ Karlsruhe is committed to promoting the national and international transfer of scientific knowledge and innovation.

The FIZ Karlsruhe has hosted the *STN International* (*Scientific and Technical Information Network*) in Europe since 1984. STN International is one of the leading online scientific and technical database providers, covering all branches of the natural sciences and technology, together with international patent information. In cooperation with its partner libraries, the FIZ Karlsruhe retrieves the information ordered by its clients, providing them with quick access to the full texts through its docu-



ment delivery service FIZ AutoDoc. In addition the FIZ offers innovative e-science solutions across all disciplines, underpinning the entire research process from concept to publication and including long-term digital archiving. Since 2012 it has been responsible for managing the technical operation of the German Digital Library (DDB).

The German Society for Information and Knowledge (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen e.V.* – DGI), founded in 1948, forms an important interface between the various information specialists operating in libraries and documentation centres; its goal is to define new perspectives for information services and to develop new techniques in knowledge management.

A fresh attempt at improving cooperation, especially between the specialist information centres and the national subject libraries, was the launching of the “information networks” at the start of the 21st century. The project was initiated by the BMBF’s strategic position paper published in 2002 under the title “Activating Knowledge through Information Networks” (*Information vernetzen – Wissen aktivieren*). Database providers, libraries and research institutions in a given subject area cooperated within these information networks to set up and administer joint literature and information services. As professional providers of full-text access to scholarly texts, including commercial products, the information networks offered their customers the choice between a subscription or pay-per-view service. Alongside the FIZ in Karlsruhe and DIMDI in Cologne a number of these information networks were created for technology (Frankfurt am Main), chemistry (Berlin), planning and building (Stuttgart), the agricultural sciences (Bonn) and law and psychology (both in Saarbrücken). Together with the Virtual Subject Libraries and the Electronic Periodicals Library they formed the nucleus of a national knowledge portal.

The subject information landscape in Germany still continues in a state of upheaval. In 2009 the Federal and State Joint Science Conference (*Gemeinsame Wissenschaftskonferenz des Bundes und der Länder* – GWK) commissioned the Leibniz Association to

develop a framework for a subject information infrastructure.

The suggestions contained in the “Recommendations of the Commission on the Future of the Information Infrastructure” (KII) submitted in 2011 under the auspices of the Leibniz Association list eight central areas of action: licensing, hosting/long-term archival, non-text materials, retrospective digitization/cultural heritage, virtual research environments, Open Access, research data, and information literacy/training. The Commission has issued concrete recommendations for each of these fields, divided into the four categories organisation, finance, technology and law and placing particular emphasis on networking between the participants and other parts of the infrastructure. The KII concept is a nationwide plan. The federal states have acted on the recommendations at state level, for example in the proposal for the further development of the academic infrastructure in Baden Württemberg published in 2014 under the name “E-Science”, which addressed five of the KII activity areas. The fields licensing, digitization, Open Access, research management and virtual research environments represent the greatest challenges currently facing Germany’s academic libraries.

## 4 PROFESSIONS AND ASSOCIATIONS

### The Organization(s) of German Librarianship

#### The Library Professions

Librarians are professionals responsible for the transfer of all types of stored information and for dealing with the fundamental raw material “knowledge”—whether they are employed in university libraries, school libraries, or in the special libraries of business enterprises. Their task of collecting, managing, indexing, cataloguing, and acting as intermediary for books and other media makes them professional partners in the media and information fields. They are already today, and will in greater measure continue to be in the future, navigators through the many data networks, making electronic information accessible and ensuring its quality and relevance are maintained.

In Germany, the spectrum of library work has expanded considerably along with the

changing demands on libraries and this is not just due to the rapid development of information and communications technology. The expectations which library users today place in media, information and reference services are radically different from the problems and information needs of users twenty or thirty years ago. The high level of these expectations is most probably a result of increasing democratic awareness amongst the public at large, who rightly demand that the modern library be a user-friendly, competent, up-to-date and well-equipped service unit.

The various professions in the areas of information, literature, and modern media have gained in relevance and scope during the last decades. In addition to the traditional librarian

The check-out and return of books and other media play an important role in the work of the typical Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellter für Medien und Informationsdienste* – FAMI). The photo shows the modern circulation desk at the new Duisburg City Library (*Stadtbibliothek Duisburg Düsseldorf*) in North Rhine-Westphalia. Often integrated into the circulation area are information and user services, the registration of new users and other activities now being often assigned to FAMIs, who call on fully-qualified librarians only when dealing with particularly complex enquiries. – Photo: Duisburg City Library



(*Bibliothekar*), new professions have evolved, such as Documentalist (*Dokumentar*), Information manager (*Informationswirt*), Archivist (*Archivar*), Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellter für Medien- und Informationsdienste*) and Information Broker—all these are branches of the information profession with converging, albeit still distinctive activities. Whilst information brokers trade in the “marketable aspects” of information, which they acquire via data networks for commercial purposes, documentalists in documentation and information centres are responsible for optimal indexing and for providing current information via data from economics, research, and technology. Archivists in the community and state archives are mostly concerned with the storage and indexing of documentary evidence and sources from past and present. All these professions now employ trained technical staff as technical assistants in libraries, image agencies, archives and documentation centres. Librarians and information managers (now with degrees at bachelor and master’s level) form an indispensable link between all these professions and the corresponding libraries, whatever their holdings and services.

Today there are approximately 24,000 full-time trained professionals in Germany in the general sector of libraries and similar institutions, around 11,000 work in public libraries. In addition, there are 50,000 volunteers or part-time staff in smaller public libraries and school libraries supported by municipalities and churches, and who acquire the practical skills for their library and information work through specialist continuing education courses and training sessions.

The rapid development of information and communications technologies and the transition to the information and service society has led to extensive changes in the professional landscape generally, not only in this country. This transition goes hand in hand with the noticeable convergence not only of related professions but also of vocations hitherto associated with other fields. This has given rise to whole new areas of employment, such as electronic publishing, multimedia, the culture industry, and media design.

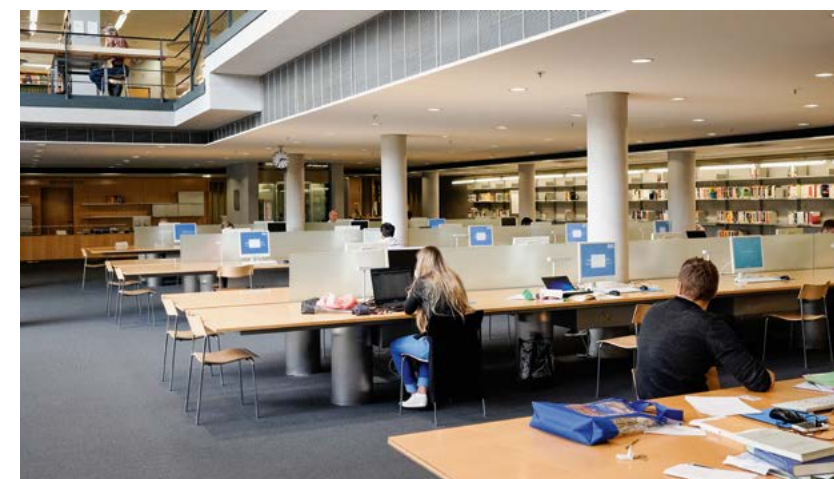
The German employment market affords information specialists increasingly good prospects, providing applicants are mobile, flexible and achievement-oriented. It is important that they gain as much experience as possible through internships, projects of their own, or student jobs during their training, that they are familiar with the terms and conditions of current employment contracts and that they can show they are at home with databases, internet technology and digital archive systems. However, exact forecasts regarding the future employment outlook for information specialists have generally proved to be extremely inaccurate.

The noticeable convergence of professional training schemes for the different information professions has been preceded by a long period—influenced by German tradition—of demarcation. The professional image has been influenced for decades not only by the separation of the public and academic library sectors but also by demarcation issues between librarians and documentalists which still exist today. Even within the staff structure of a single library the professional landscape is often finely subdivided.

The reasons for this are less the result of the structure of German librarianship than of German labour and professional occupational legislation. Since public service careers for the so-called academic and research library service were first established at the end of the 19th century, it has been the strictly hierarchical structure together with all its corresponding rules and regulations rather than the principles of customer service which has led to the pronounced value placed on status and the resulting need for demarcation.

At the beginning of the 21st century, the distinction between the professional sectors is fading somewhat, in favour of new subdivisions rating libraries and their staff by size, targeted user groups, the level of professional qualifications, or alternatively by library performance indicators or the scope of their services. Within the professions and their training programmes, the main emphasis in the future will be on those core qualifications, skills, and competencies common to all the professional branches and required of every library employee.

Well-equipped modern working areas in university and higher education libraries help to meet the needs of students for books and non-book materials. The photo shows the Multimedia Reading Room of the German National Library (Deutsche Nationalbibliothek) in Frankfurt am Main (Hesse), popular with students and boasting the latest in modern technology and a multimedia processing system supporting the acquisition, administration, retrieval and presentation of electronic publications. – Photo: S. Jockel, DNB



In publicly-funded libraries, library staff are either employed on a salaried basis as “employees in the public service” (*Beschäftigter im Öffentlichen Dienst*, formerly *Angestellter* or *Arbeiter*) or as tenured public servants. Library staff with civil servant status have a special service and loyalty obligation towards their employers and are paid according to federal or state laws. Library staff with “employee” status (*Angestellte*) are paid according to private law. For decades they were bound by the collective wage agreements known as “The Federal Employees’ Tariff Agreement” (*Bundesangestelltentarif* – BAT), negotiated by the unions and the public employers, until this was succeeded in 2006 at municipal and federal level by the “Federal Collective Tariff Agreement for the Public Service” (*Tarifvertrag Öffentlicher Dienst* – TVöD) and at state level by the “Federal State Collective Tariff Agreement” (*Tarifvertrag der Länder* – TV-L). The hierarchical structure of the remuneration system in the TVöD and TV-L is similar to the salary brackets applicable to the public servants.

In the public service, the tenured *Beamte* and the corresponding *Angestellte* are assigned to different career bands: the unskilled or basic (*einfacher*), the skilled or middle (*mittlerer*), the upper (*gehobener*), and the higher (*höherer*) service levels. These bands also determine their salary or pay scale, assignment to a particular band depending on education and qualification. A similar ruling applies to the staff of

church-run libraries but not to employees in company libraries, where employment contracts are negotiated on an individual basis and are subject to normal civil legislation. Here salaries are only occasionally based on those of the public service tariffs.

### The History of Professional Librarianship Training

Professional training for librarianship and other related professions has been in constant flux during the last two decades, and it would be presumptuous to try to cover everything. On the one hand, the constant changes are an expression of a political readiness to adapt to current developments, especially at European level, and to modernize course content accordingly. On the other, they also reflect the uncertainty of the political decision-makers who have seen the amalgamation and fusion of individual training institutions as the only possible solution in view of the general pressure to cut costs.

Formal training for the library profession did not begin in Germany until the end of the 19th century. In 1893, the Prussian government passed a decree stipulating professional training for librarians and prescribing its content. Those with a university degree who aspired to become librarians were required to complete a postgraduate training programme. The training scheme for the higher public service career band (*Referendarausbildung*) can be traced



back both to this Prussian regulation and to an ordinance of the Bavarian government of 1905; it has for decades has been the standard method of training for academic and research librarians and is still in force in some federal states today. The professional librarianship training system upon which most of the courses in the Universities of Applied Sciences are based began in 1914 with the founding of the first library school in Leipzig.

As a result of the German partition, librarianship training developed along heterogeneous lines following the Second World War and particularly in West Germany was strongly influenced by the federal structures and sectoral demarcation there. After reunification, the further reform and continuing development of librarianship training was anything but uniform. Even today the general picture is still very higgledy-piggledy, though there is agreement on a common subject content core. Standard content includes above all management studies, marketing and library management, database and internet applications, search strategy, information and communications technology, information services, service and customer orientation and the literature and media markets. Another decisive characteristic of all study and training courses is the emphasis placed on the practical aspects of librarianship.

### Librarianship Training and Training Institutions in Germany

In practice, professional library activities in most academic and larger public libraries are organized on four levels: At the highest level are academic librarians with a university education (*Höherer Dienst* / Master's degree), followed by certified librarians or qualified information managers with a professional librarianship or information management diploma from a University of Applied Sciences. At the next level are the Technical Library Assistants for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellte für Medien- und Informationsdienste* – FAMI) or *Bibliotheksassistenten* at the middle public service level, with semi-skilled library employees at the lowest level.

Most librarians employed at the academic level (*wissenschaftlicher Dienst*) have a univer-



sity degree and have usually completed a special graduate course in librarianship following the completion of their first degree, either in the form of a four-semester graduate course or a two-year training programme. The former variation is a conventional or in-service university course where the participants have normal student status, while the latter is part of the traditional preparatory training for the public service, with probationary status. In either case the training programme will include both practical and theoretical aspects. The practical part involves a period spent in a certified academic training library or on a practice-related project while the theoretical part consists of formal teaching at a university institution of higher education. At the end of the two-year training programme, candidates sit the state examination for the higher public service (*Staatsexamen*). In the past, those who chose the four-semester graduate course qualified as “Academic Librarian” (*Wissenschaftlicher Bibliothekar*) or “Magister Artium” (M.A.); since 2007/2008 most of those completing courses in librarianship and information science or similar

have qualified with the degree title “Master of Library and Information Science” (MLIS/MALIS) or “Master of Arts” (M.A.), depending on whether they graduated from a university of applied sciences or the Humboldt University in Berlin.

Typically, librarians at the higher level in academic and research libraries will be responsible for the selection and classification of subject literature, for reference and advisory services, for the coordination of internal and external library organization, and for planning of, and cooperation within, projects involving new information technologies. Many of these activities require leadership skills.

The Universities of Applied Sciences (FH/TH) are responsible for the bachelor (formerly “diploma”) and master's degree courses in librarianship, offered by nine German university institutions. The previous library schools were gradually restructured, initially into independent Universities of Applied Sciences; they have since been incorporated into the larger Universities of Applied Sciences or the Humboldt University of Berlin as separate faculties or departments offering appropriate study courses.

Stuttgart Media University (Baden-Württemberg) is one of several training facilities for librarians in Germany. It was founded when the former College of Library and Information Science was merged with the College of Printing and Media, undertaking coverage of all media-related disciplines. Library and information management courses are among the over 20 accredited bachelor and master's degree programmes available to the 4,500 students. The construction of suitable new buildings has enabled all the university's formerly separate sites to be relocated to a central campus. – Photo: HdM Stuttgart

The name *Fachhochschule* is increasingly being replaced with “University”. A degree course formerly lasted between seven and eight semesters and included work experience periods of variable length or practical training semesters as an integral part of the course structure. The current bachelor's degree courses generally last for six semesters, the subsequent optional master's degrees a further four semesters. Practical work experience plays a greater role in these new bachelor courses than in the traditional university degree courses. In the federal, state and local government public services, qualified library staff with diploma or bachelor's degree are assigned to the upper public service level.

There is only one recognised librarianship training course organised according to German dual system principles (combined theoretical training and on-the-job practice); it replaced the former qualification “Library Assistant” (*Assistent an Bibliotheken*) in 1999. On leaving secondary or grammar school, trainees can take a three-year course to qualify as “Technical Library Assistant for Media and Information Services (*Fachangestellte für Medien- und Informationsdienste* – FAMI). The course content focuses on five separate special study areas: libraries, archives, general information and documentation, image agencies, or medical documentation. Student numbers vary considerably depending on the chosen option; since around 75% of trainees come from libraries, the vocational schools experience a clear library-related bias. In second place is the special subject Archives with about 10.0%, then Information and Documentation with about 8.0%, while only 5.0% opt for medical documentation and a smaller number still for image agencies.

In Frankfurt am Main it has been possible since 2012 to go on to take a further training course to qualify as *Fachwirt für Informationsdienst* (Information Services Specialist). In Bavaria trainees with university entrance qualifications who have successfully passed the public service selection examination can go on to qualify as *Diplombibliothekare*.

Vocational education committees (*Berufsausbildungsausschüsse*) in the Chambers of Commerce (*Industrie- und Handelskammer – IHK*) and special units at the district administrative or top state government level advise on and coordinate the individual components of the FAMI training courses. An Education and Training Master Plan (*Ausbildungsrahmenplan*) and an on-the-job training plan define sequence, objectives and content of the combined theoretical and practical training programme. There are no fixed formal entry requirements for this qualification; most candidates graduate from high school with the secondary school leaving certificate known as the *Mittlere Reife*.

Training institutions for librarianship can be categorized as follows:

- *Vocational training schools (Berufsschulen)* offering training courses for the middle public service band for FAMIs opting for the library specialization
- *Departments of Library and Information Science (Fachbereiche für Bibliotheks- und Informationswesen)* or of Information and Communication Science (*Informations- und Kommunikationswissenschaft*) at public institutions of higher education or internal administrative academies.
- *University degree programmes* in library science (*universitäre Studiengänge der Bibliothekswissenschaft*), of which the only example is at the Humboldt University in Berlin at the Institute for Library Science (*Institut für Bibliothekswissenschaft*), which offers distance-learning postgraduate and conventional bachelor's degree courses.

Courses of study for the library professions at universities, institutions of higher education and universities of applied science are possible today at a total of nine locations in Germany—see illustrated plan of the training institutions.

| Librarianship Training Institutions in Germany 2017 |   |  |
|---|---|--|
|   |   | Degrees:   |
| <b>Berlin</b>                                       | Humboldt-University of Berlin (IBI)<br>Institute of Library Science   | BERLIN: Library and information science<br>Bachelor (BA)<br>Master (MA) incl. MA Distance Executive Programme, Doctorate   |
| <b>Darmstadt</b>                                    | Darmstadt University of Applied Sciences (h_da):<br>Campus Dieburg: Faculty of Media Studies (Information Science)  | DARMSTADT/ Dieburg Campus: Information Science<br>Bachelor of Engineering (B.Sc.)<br>Master of Science (M.Sc.)   |
| <b>Hamburg</b>                                      | Hamburg University of Applied Sciences:<br>Faculty of Design, Media, Information  | HAMBURG: Library and Information Management (BIM)<br>Bachelor of Arts (BA)<br>Master of Arts (MA) Information, Media, and Library Management   |
| <b>Hanover</b>                                      | Hanover University of Applied Sciences: Faculty III:<br>Media, Information and Design; Information and Knowledge<br>Management Division, Dept. of Information and Communication | HANOVER: Bachelor of Arts (BA)<br>Information Management (also as part-time in-service training)<br>Master of Arts (MA) Information and Knowledge Management<br>(in-service study programme) |
| <b>Cologne</b>                                      | Cologne Univ. of Applied Sciences:<br>Faculty of Information and Communication,<br>Dept. of Information Science   | COLOGNE: Library Science<br>Bachelor of Arts (BA)<br>Master of Library and Information Science (MALIS – part-time<br>in-service), individual modules also available through the ZBIW         |
| <b>Leipzig</b>                                      | Leipzig University of Technology, Economics and Culture (HTWK):<br>Faculty of Media   | LEIPZIG: Library and Information Science<br>Bachelor of Arts (BA)<br>Master of Arts (MA)   |
| <b>Munich</b>                                       | University for the Public Services of Bavaria:<br>Dept. of Archive Management and Librarianship   | MUNICH: Certified Academic Librarian (FH – until 2017)<br>Certified Archivist (FH)<br>Bachelor of Arts (BA) Library and Information Management   |
| <b>Potsdam</b>                                      | Potsdam University of Applied Sciences:<br>Faculty of Information Sciences  | POTSDAM: Bachelor of Arts (BA) Archival Studies, Library Management,<br>Information and Data Management; Master of Arts (MA)<br>Information Sciences, Archival Science, part-time in-service |
| <b>Stuttgart</b>                                    | Stuttgart Media University<br>(HdM)   | STUTTGART: Library and Information Management<br>Bachelor of Arts (MA)<br>Master of Arts (MA), part-time in-service  |

## Continuing Professional Education and Training for Library Staff

Librarianship training has for years been the subject of intensive discussion in Germany and is generally considered to be of very uneven quality. In order to meet demands for enhanced professional standards in librarianship and information science, the development of a systematic and well-structured programme of continuing professional education and training for library staff has long been called for. Training in the sense of life-long learning involves above all incorporating qualification into internal staff development programmes as part of the basic library management concept.

In Germany, there are around 25 regional and national institutions offering continuing professional education for librarians, among others:

- the professional associations dbv, BIB and VDB with their regional subsections
- the library network headquarters
- the state, university and regional libraries
- the universities and Universities of Applied Sciences offering librarianship courses (e.g. the Centre for Library and Information Science Training at the Technical University of Applied Sciences (TH) in Cologne, the Training Centre at the Freie Universität Berlin or the part-time distance learning courses at the University of Applied Sciences in Potsdam)
- the public and church library service centres
- the larger city libraries
- the ministries and administrative authorities (e.g. the training course database of the qualification gateway e-teaching.org)
- the Chambers of Commerce and municipal academies (responsible for testing candidates' aptitude and for training the trainers)
- the state-owned library suppliers ekz. Bibliotheksservice GmbH
- commercial enterprises and foundations, private institutions, societies and associations in the educational and cultural sectors.

With around 800 continuing professional education courses being offered annually, the selection is both comprehensive and varied,

although following the closure of the German Library Institute (Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut) in 2002 there is sore need of a coordinating body for all professional education providers and a central professional education and training database. The attempt to establish the professional education portal *Wissen-bringt-weiter* (Knowledge Helps You Go Further) set up by the University of Applied Sciences in Hamburg at the end of 2005 was deemed to have failed in 2014. Since then the website library-training.de hosted by the BIB and VDB has provided regular and reliable information on the training courses offered by 12 providers.

## Cooperation Among German Libraries

The principle of federal state cultural autonomy and Germany's federal structure are the main reasons for the surprising variety of independent libraries and funding bodies. This variety gives individual ideas and creative methods free rein, though individualization carries with it an inherent danger of fragmentation. But since no library is self-sufficient, extensive cooperation between libraries and the establishment of national-level institutions and services assumes a particularly important role, especially since the active representation of library interests at federal level is imperative. The lack of an agency for library development as advocated both in the DBI position paper "Libraries in 2007" (*Bibliothek 2007*) and in the 2007 concluding report of the parliamentary Committee of Enquiry into Culture in Germany is most sorely felt. It is not only a question of preventing libraries from duplicating each other's work unnecessarily and helping them to improve their services; the main objective is to fight fragmentation by developing appropriate strategic and structural library policies.

Since the onset of the 20th century, numerous library organizations, institutions, and associations with national functions have been created. These have moulded librarianship in Germany and inspired new developments. Some of them can look back on a long tradition.

There are both advantages and disadvantages to the fact that library cooperation is not state-regulated or organized. It manifests itself primarily within the framework of non-govern-



ment professional societies and institutional associations. It is important to distinguish between these two categories: Professional societies consist of qualified librarians and other library employees who have joined together to further their mutual professional interests. They also function as professional discussion forums and public representatives of their members' joint interests. Institutional associations are made up of libraries, library-related institutions and representatives of their funding agencies; their mission is the pursuit of common library interests, the development of uniform standards and the enhancement of the position of libraries and librarians in politics and society.

In the mid 1990's an unsuccessful attempt was made to merge the four (now two) associations of professional librarians BIB and VDB with the institutional association dbv to form a single German organization. The task of developing an organizational structure like that of Switzerland, Great Britain, the United States, or, at international level, of IFLA, still remains a long-term goal in the eyes of many German professional librarians.

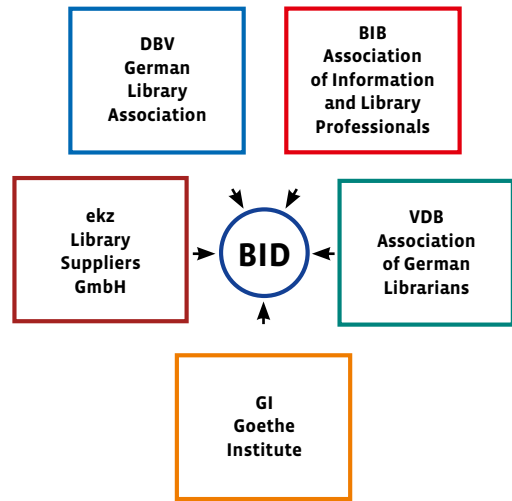
The leading professional bodies are those united under the umbrella organization Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (*Bibliothek & Information Deutschland* – BID), together with other institutions to be described below.



**The Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID) as Umbrella Organisation**

The harmonization of professional and library political interests necessary for the further encouragement of interlibrary cooperation and the effective representation of library interests before the public was first realized in the 1960's and 1970's with the foundation (in 1963) of the German Library Conference (*Deutsche Bibliothekskonferenz* – DBK) and the compilation of the Library Plan '73 (*Bibliothekspan '73*). To strengthen the public image further, the National Federation of German Library Associations (*Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände e.V.* – BDB) was founded in September 1989 as successor to the German Library Conference. When the DGI became a member in 2004 the name was changed to Libraries & Information: Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations

**Members of the Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations (BID)**  
Updated 1/1/2017



(*Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V.* – *Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheks- und Informationsverbände* – BID). After the DGI left the Federation at the end of 2012 the name affix was suitably shortened in 2013.

The BID e.V. (=eingetragener Verein, registered non-profit-making society) is German librarianship's umbrella organization, uniting the three institutional and professional associations, the library suppliers ekz and the prominent cultural establishment Goethe Institute. At one time the Bertelsmann Foundation and the German Society for Information and Knowledge were also members of the Federation. As non-profit association the BID represents the joint interests of all its members at national and European level, and on international committees.

In view of the increasingly active support for library interests from the individual member organisations, the main remit of the umbrella institution is to provide its members with a discussion forum, to enable them to network with each other, to prevent paralysing conflicts, and to coordinate national and international advocacy groups. Common objectives are now at the root of all forward-looking strategic plans, with the Commissions and Working Groups of the member organisations all contributing their expertise to the process. In view of the plethora of the educational and technological challenges it faces, the BID aspires to the image of an efficient, sustainable and unified lobby group whenever it engages in dialogue with municipal associations, federal states or the Federal Government.

The BID is based in Berlin. Its organs are the General Meeting or Members' Assembly (*Mitgliederversammlung*), the Executive Committee (*Vorstand*) and the President (with two deputies). Annual reports document the BID's work. The BID is a member of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), and represents the interests of German libraries and professional associations in the European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations (EBLIDA). Its membership in the German Literature Conference (*Deutsche Literaturkonferenz*) means it is also indirectly a member of the German Cultural Council (*Deutscher Kulturrat*), working with

the specialist committees and speakers' council. In addition the BID has a seat in the German UNESCO Commission and in the German Institute for Adult Education (*Deutsches Institut für Erwachsenenbildung*).

The BID's international activities are an important aspect of its work and are funded by the Foreign Office in Berlin and the Commissioner of the Federal Government for Culture and Media (*Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien* – BKM). This funding enables the BID's standing committee Library & Information International (*Bibliothek & Information International* – BII) to further the international exchange of professional opinion and know-how by awarding travel bursaries to German and non-German librarians to help them spend time studying and working abroad and take part in international conferences.

The umbrella organization awards the Karl Preusker Medal (*Karl-Preusker-Medaille*) in memory of Karl Preusker (1786–1871), the founder of the first German public library in Grossenhain near Dresden, opened on 24.10.1828. The medal is awarded to committed individuals in recognition of special services to German librarianship; there is a full list of the recipients in the Appendices.

Every three years Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V. and the German Library Congress (*Deutscher Bibliothekartag*) jointly host the Leipzig Information and Library Congress, one of the largest professional conferences in Germany. Since 2000 the Congress has been held immediately before the Spring Fair exhibition in Leipzig.

In 2009 the BID published the promotional brochure "21 Good Reasons for Good Libraries" (*21 gute Gründe für gute Bibliotheken*), intended to help library professionals further the cause of libraries in their discussions with political and financial decision-makers and to provide a general basis for lobby work. The brochure contains three supplements: "Basic principles of good libraries—guidelines for decision-makers", "Indicators of Achievement and Quality" for public and higher education libraries, and a draft Library Law for Germany.

### German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv)

The history of the German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv) began in the western half of divided Germany in 1949. In the GDR, a separate German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband – BV) was established in 1964 to represent libraries with professional staff and other professional institutions concerned with librarianship, information and documentation. Until 1990 it was known as Library Association of the German Democratic Republic (Bibliotheksverband der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik).

After reunification of Germany, the West and East German Library Associations merged to form the current German Library Association (Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V.). This new broad-based institutional association had approximately 2,100 members and more than 3,000 libraries at the start of 2017. Regular membership is open to all professionally run libraries, state and church library service centres, and other institutions related to librarianship and documentation.

The association strives above all to raise awareness of the importance of libraries in culture, education and science and to reinforce the role they play in society and politics. Its main objectives are the nationwide provision of an up-to-date library service and the expansion and consolidation of a legal and financial framework for comprehensive library services. The promotion of reading, media and information literacy and the general media and information skills required to deal with the wide variety of digital formats have the same priority as the equal treatment of print and electronic publications, updating the legal regulations governing libraries, reinforcing the information infrastructure in research and science and the Sunday opening of public libraries. The forging of a national strategy for future library development and adequate library funding is a major priority

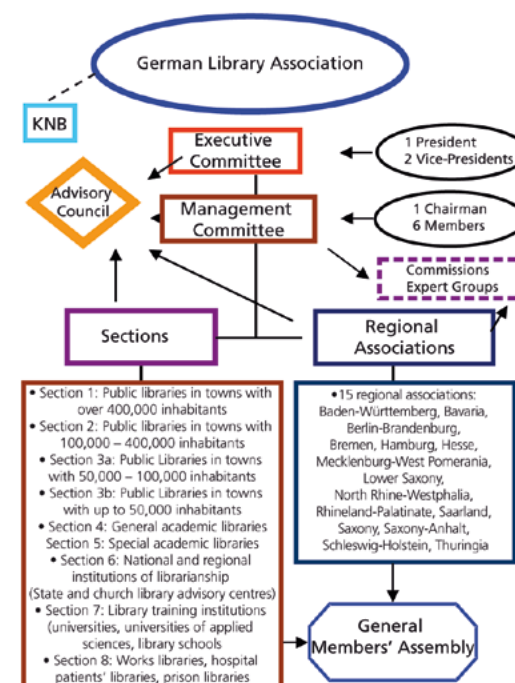
and essential if libraries are to succeed in joining other education and culture institutions in dealing effectively with the challenges of digital change, integration and media education.

The dbv focuses on defining and achieving library-related strategic goals, and publishes a range of reports and position papers on current topics. The annual Report on the State of Libraries (*Bericht zur Lage der Bibliotheken*), published each year on October 24th, is designed to provide decision-makers and the media with information on library-related issues and problems. To maximise its influence on parliamentary decision-making and legislative processes the association acts through its 16 regional associations to maintain regular contact both with federal and state parliaments and ministries and with leading local organisations and regional authorities. Using election performance benchmarking to put questions to the political parties before elections—and later to keep a critical eye on coalition negotiations—the dbv is able to define forthcoming library-related political objectives and talk to politicians about current topics and events.

In 2016 the Association posted its latest product on the internet—a substantial online package of tools designed to help library lobbyists. It contains practical materials and arguments including strategies for future-proofing, general information, and tips on how best to communicate with politicians and the press. To help in the preparation of lobby discussions the association has published short factsheets listing the latest library-related figures and including checklists on efficient lobbying.

The dbv's press and public relations work has significantly raised public awareness of the important role libraries play in education, culture and science and of the need of every citizen to play an active part in society. The Association posts current information on its own website, on social media and in its newsletter and contributes regular articles on professional topics to a range of media.

The national federal campaign “Network Library”, a project funded from 2013 to 2017 by the Federal Ministry of Education and Research and coordinated by the dbv secretariat, focused attention on digital services and the achievements of German librarianship in edu-



Member organs and division of the dbv into sections and regional associations

cation. The campaign provides libraries with a platform where they can actively engage with the digital changes taking place in society. The forerunner project, which ran from 2008 to 2013 under the motto *Treffpunkt Bibliothek – Information hat viele Gesichter* (Meeting Point Library—Information has many faces), was the first to concentrate on raising library awareness; the events were accompanied by celebrity library ambassadors, a national advertising campaign and activities in thousands of libraries, with information available on a central website to help promote local, regional and national public-relations and publicity actions.

The title “Library of the Year” (*Bibliothek des Jahres*) has been conferred by the dbv since 2000 on selected libraries from all sectors for their outstanding and innovative achievements. Until 2013 the award was sponsored until 2012 by the Ebelin and Gerd Bucerius Foundation (*Zeit-Stiftung Ebelin und Gerd Bucerius*) and the weekly newspaper *Die Zeit*; in 2017 the Deutsche Telekom Stiftung took over the role of sponsor. The title is given for outstanding, exemplary and innovative work by libraries

of any sector to encourage competitive quality, creativity, innovation and digitization. Initially endowed with 30,000 euros, now 20,000 euros it is the only national library award. The recipient library is selected by an independent jury with members nominated by the sponsors, the state Ministries of Education, the Federal Government, the Standing Conference of Cultural Ministers, the German Association of Towns and Cities (*Deutscher Städtetag*), the Zeit Foundation (*Zeit-Stiftung*) and the BID. The prize-giving ceremony takes place on “Library Day”; the names of the winning libraries are listed in the appendices at the end of the book.

Since 1987 the dbv has presented the German Libraries’ Award for Journalism (*Publizistenpreis der deutschen Bibliotheken*) to journalists, authors and presenters in any branches of the media for outstanding achievements in presenting a modern image of current library work and developments. The Award was inaugurated by the former dbv Chairman Helmut Sontag, who held the position from 1983 to 1986. Since 2010 the call for nominations has been issued jointly by the dbv and the publishers *Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft* (WBG); the award is endowed with 5,000 Euros, of which each organisation contributes one half.

“Library Day”, which has been celebrated each year on October 24th since 1995, is intended to spotlight the varied activities and events at around 10,000 libraries in Germany and to draw attention to their huge range of services.

Other activities include

- Publication of specialist opinions and professional reports on matters of particular importance
- Provision and supply of professional information
- Organisation and realisation of professional information and continuing professional education courses, including webinars in the online webinar academy
- Initiation of scholarly research on German librarianship
- Development of promotional programmes in cooperation with the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*), the Federal Ministry of Education (*Bundesbildungsministerium*),



- the Commissioners for Culture and the Media (*Beauftragte für Kultur und Medien*) and the Standing Conference of the Ministers of Education and Cultural Affairs (*Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder – KMK*)
- European and international cooperation and the sharing of professional library knowledge



The “Heinrich Heine” City Library in Halberstadt (*Stadtbibliothek Heinrich Heine Halberstadt*) (Saxony-Anhalt) moved into a former chapel in the 600-year-old Petershof on the Domplatz in the year 2000 and in the same year was selected as the “Library of the Year”. Around 100,000 media are displayed over 1,770 m<sup>2</sup>. The high rooms enable the use of mezzanine floors, thus increasing the amount of usable space.  
– Photo: J. Feist, ekz

- The *dbv*’s library policy interests are also vigorously promoted by its regional associations, which represent the interests of the member libraries at federal state level while also providing a platform for the mutual exchange of information and professional knowledge and lobbying the appropriate federal state parliamentary committees. The 15 regional associations were, and still are, responsible for launching many new ideas, such as the regional library

awards (e.g. in Bremen, Lower Saxony, Hesse, Saxony, Schleswig-Holstein and Thuringia), state-level library days (e.g. in Lower Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt and Rhineland-Palatinate), library legislation initiatives and programmes to secure the survival of libraries and library service centres.

Within the *dbv* the chairmen of the regional associations support the work of the executive committee in their function as members of the advisory council. Many of the regional associations are registered non-profit making organizations. The Association of Libraries of the State of North Rhine-Westphalia (*Verband der Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen e.V – vbnw*), founded in 1948, deserves special mention as the largest regional association with around 350 members; it publishes the highly-regarded scholarly journal *Pro Libris*.

The *dbv* is structured into eight sections, grouping together libraries of similar size and sector and enabling them to exchange knowledge and discuss pertinent issues. Further specific topics are dealt with by working groups within each section. The work of the sections covers a wide spectrum of subjects, ranging from questions relating to project funding, the provision of digital services, quality management measures and the promotion of open access to the structuring of bachelor and master’s degree courses in the field of information studies or discussions on the importance of library work with specific user groups.

The German Special Libraries Association (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken e.V – ASpB*), founded in 1946, is also a member of Section 5 and welcomes both institutional and personal memberships, with over 1,000 current members. Its aim is to promote cooperation between special libraries, represent the interests of this particular type of library in the public arena, and to contribute to the exchange of professional expertise. To this end, the *ASpB* hosts a biennial professional conference and publishes the proceedings.

The Conference of Training and Degree Courses in Library and Information Science (*Konferenz der informations- und bibliothekswissenschaftlichen Ausbildungs- und Studiengänge – KIBA*) represents the interests of the training and

degree courses at the general and applied sciences universities in the field of library and information science (LIS) in Germany. Structurally speaking, the *KIBA* is a member of Section 7 of the *dbv* and also belongs to the Training Section of the German Association for Information and Knowledge (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen e.V. – DGI*). As lobby group for the training of information professionals it asserts its influence on professional associations, politicians, business and other training institutions outside the higher education sector. At a European level it represents its members in international organizations such as the *European Association for Library and Information Education and Research* (EUCLID).

In 2003 the *dbv* expanded the scope of its activities considerably when it assumed responsibility for the Commissions and Expert Groups of the former German Library Institute (*Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut – DBI*). The Commissions, including all the former Expert Groups, operate on a voluntary basis, have their own budgets and are coordinated by the secretariat of the *dbv* or the *VDB*. The Federal Directorate both advertises posts and selects suitable applicants, if necessary with the help of the *VDB* board. In 2017 there were 12 Commissions: Library Buildings (*dbv/VDB*), Conservation, Libraries and Schools, Acquisitions and Collection Development, Mobile Libraries, Information Literacy (*dbv/VDB*), Intercultural Library Work, Libraries for Children and Young People, Customer-Centred Services, Management (*dbv/VDB*), Provenance Research and Cataloguing, and Law.

In addition there are seven Working Groups in two Sections dealing with current topics and projects: In Section 4 (Academic General Libraries) there are the ad-hoc Working Groups Library 2030, Manuscripts and Early Printed Books, Performance Measurement, Private University Libraries, Regional Libraries and Specialised Subject Services, and in Section 8 (Works Libraries, Hospital Patients’ Libraries and Prison Libraries) the Working Group for Prison Libraries.

The guidelines “Libraries as powerful agents for education and culture in the city and municipality” published in May 2016 are the first joint statement to have been made by the *dbv* and

the main municipality associations (*Deutscher Städtetag* and *Deutscher Städte- und Gemeindebund*) for years. The German Rural District Association (*Deutscher Landkreistag*) did not feel the need for external counsel so that the recommendations do not apply to the libraries in these areas. The paper refers to a variety of current expectations and spheres of activity while also pointing to future developments in the public library sector. In particular it details the contribution libraries can make to solving problems caused by demographic change, digitization or migration and indicates ways in which they can support education projects at local government level, or help improve media literacy in relation to both old and new media. The main focus is on forming networks of libraries and other partners in the local education and administrative sector (e.g. nursery schools, school, adult education centres, retirement homes).



#### **Network of Excellence for Libraries (knb) of the dbv**

The Library Expertise Network (*Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken – knb*) was advocated by the *dbv* and duly established by the *KMK* in 2004, receiving its funding from the federal states. The *knb* is an alliance of institutions which have proved their worth in coordinating library work in the past; it has a decentralised approach to handling important national issues, with the German Library Association *dbv* responsible for coordinating its activities. The *knb* is managed by a committee of six members, consisting of one member each from the library networks, libraries with a national remit and the state service centres, plus two from the *dbv* and one from the *KMK*. The incumbent *dbv* president also heads the *knb* governing council.

The main goals of the *knb* are to make information and factual material available for planning and decision-making at federal and state level, to identify strategic priorities, generally reinforce the role of libraries and to furnish an infrastructure for library cooperation

whilst also providing support for innovative developments and the enhancement of international relations. The work of the knb covers a wide range of activities, all of which have in common that they can best be pursued at national level, require continuity and are aimed at furthering levels of library cooperation whilst not being subject to any of the limitations of short-term projects. The formal basis for the work of the knb is the administrative agreement on the Network of Excellence for Libraries (*Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken*) reached on November 6th 2003 and the “Round Table” report of March 24th 2003 addressed to the KMK Working Group on Libraries.

The dbv has created new sections with full-time staff within its secretariat in Berlin to accommodate the fields of international cooperation, advice on EU and third-party funding, the library portal, and the coordination of the network as a whole. External institutions have been engaged to service two important areas: the University Library Service Centre (*Hochschulbibliothekszentrum*) in North Rhine-Westphalia is responsible for compiling the German Library Statistics (*Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik* – DBS) and managing the expertise group Performance Measurement and Comparison aimed at widening the scope of the DBS to embrace quality management (as a replacement for the BIX Library Index discontinued in 2015). The German Standards Institute (*Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.* – DIN) Institute has been charged with representing Germany on international standards councils.

In cooperation with the HBZ, the journal B.I.T. Online and infas, the dbv took on responsibility from 2006 to 2015 for the Library Index (*Bibliothekindex* – BIX), originally created in 1999 by the Bertelsmann Foundation. The Association and the HBZ were forced to discontinue the national benchmarking system for libraries after 16 years when all attempts to establish a sustainable long-term financial model failed. In 2015 209 public and academic libraries had opted to submit their performance data for comparison. The BIX index was seen as a catalyst with an innovative effect on the DBS. An expertise group from the dbv and HBZ has been working on an adaptation of the DBS to enable more effective ways of presenting library per-

formance levels to funding agencies, the public, and the libraries themselves. A revised version of the statistics is expected to be available in 2018.

Since 2006 the library gateway *Bibliotheksportal*, designed for professional librarians, journalists and politicians, has also assumed the function of central point of contact and knowledge base for those requiring comprehensive information on the German library system as a whole. According to this portal the website [www.bibliotheksportale.de](http://www.bibliotheksportale.de), which is supplemented by a yellow pages-style index of companies offering a range of library-related services and products, is accessed on average 287,000 times a month.



**Association of Information and Library Professionals (*Berufsverband Information Bibliothek e.V.* – BIB)**

The Association of Information and Library Professionals (BIB) was formed in the year 2000 following the amalgamation of two formerly separate associations, the Association of Librarians and Library Assistants (*Verein der Bibliothekare und Assistenten e.V.* – VBA), and the Association of Certified Librarians in Academic and Research Libraries (*Verein der Diplom-Bibliothekare an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken e.V.* – VdDB, founded in 1948). The VBA was itself formed as a result of a merger in 1997, in this case between the Association of Librarians in Public Libraries (*Verein der Bibliothekare an Öffentlichen Bibliotheken e.V.* – VBB), founded in 1949) and the National Association of Library Assistants and Other Staff in Libraries (*Bundesverein der Bibliotheksassistent/innen und Assistenten und anderer Mitarbeiter/innen an Bibliotheken e.V.* – BBA, founded in 1987).

Today, the BIB comprises approximately 6,300 members (librarians, media archivists, library assistants, cultural managers, information brokers, documentalists, trainees and students of

related subjects) and is thus the larger of the two associations for professional librarians. Although it does not see itself as a trade union organization, its focus is nevertheless primarily on the professional representation of its members' interests, with particular emphasis being placed on the improvement, modernization, and standardization of librarianship training, the forging and implementation of a modern professional image, negotiation of fair rates of pay for trainees and appropriate pay-scale grouping for practising librarians, and staff qualification through targeted continuing education measures. The professional association makes a significant contribution to the improvement of staff qualification through its many training courses (such as summer courses and ekz-BIB seminars), mainly organized by the 15 regional groups. Since 2006 the BIB has maintained a training database (DAPS) which lists training and work experience institutions alongside universities and vocational training institutions offering librarianship programmes. The database targets professionals at entry level, job seekers, potential and current students, trainees and training libraries offering work experience programmes.

Notable areas of activity typically concern planning and structural issues relating to the German library system, the establishment of national and international relations, management topics, and— together with the VDB—the planning and execution of the German Library Congress (*Deutscher Bibliothekartag*), second in size only to the German Library Congress. The conference papers of past years are available online on the document server BIB-OPUS. The BIB operates at national and European level and beyond, cooperating closely with non-German and international organizations and maintaining international links (BII, EBLIDA, IFLA) and cooperative agreements with professional associations in Italy, Austria and Switzerland via the conference series “The Learning Library”. The Association is able to offer support for members looking for internships abroad, particularly in the USA, Great Britain and Scandinavia.

The National Executive Committee (*Bundesvorstand*) of the BIB, consisting of up to five members, is assisted by an Association Commit-

tee (*Vereinsausschuss*), comprising representatives of the 15 state groups (*Landesgruppen*), the National Executive Committee and the seven Commissions (Training and Professional Profiles KAUB, Pay Scale Guidance KEB, Training FobiKom, One-Person Libraries OPL, Association Marketing and Communication KVV, Web Commission Web-Komm, “New Professionals” Interest Group). A three-quarter majority is required for the approval of important constitutional changes. The main offices of the Association are in Reutlingen.

Published checklists on various issues in management and practical aspects of librarianship provide support for practicing librarians. Some important publications of the past few years are:

- *Leitfaden FaMi-Ausbildung* (FaMi Training Guidelines). 2nd ed. 2011
- *Neue Wege in der Aus- und Fortbildung: Vorträge zum 101. Dt. Bibliothekartag in Hamburg 2012* (New Paths and Methods in Training: Papers held at the 101st German Library Conference in Hamburg 2012).
- Checklists published by the OPL Commission. Already published in pdf format: 1/2003: *Bibliotheksumzug* (Moving your library)—39/2015: *Recherchieren in Wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken* (Doing research in academic libraries)

Up until its demise in 2013 the biennial Yearbook of Public Libraries (*Jahrbuch der Öffentlichen Bibliotheken*), which served as an address book, was published by the BIB. The Association's most important print title is the professional library journal “BuB: Forum Bibliothek und Information” first published in 1949; the current circulation is approximately 9,000. Since mid-2016 the journal can also be read on tablets, smartphones and notebooks via an app available free of charge to BIB members.



**Association of German Librarians  
(Verein Deutscher Bibliothekarinnen  
und Bibliothekare e.V. – VDB)**

The Association of German Librarians (VDB), founded in 1900, is the oldest library association in Germany.

Until the mid-1970's, the VDB was responsible for all national-level institutional librarianship work in Germany. Then the dbv, or more specifically the DBI, took over and the VDB relinquished these functions to become an association of individual professional librarians. There are currently around 1,700 members, most of whom hold senior positions in the academic sector, are undergoing training or identify closely with the association's objectives. The VDB's goals are to encourage contact between academic and research librarians, to represent their professional interests, to help them continue to develop their professional skills and to promote academic librarianship. The association concerns itself with all professional library issues, organises training courses and conferences, issues statements on topics of current interest, publishes contributions on librarianship and works together with other organisations in the field of library and information work. Particular importance is attached to the qualification of young librarians and to continuing professional training in theory and practice. The VDB is divided into eight regional associations and maintains three of its own Standing Commissions: on professional qualifications, legal issues, subject specialist issues, while a further three are organised jointly with the dbv: the Buildings Commission, the Commission for Information Literacy and the Management Commission.

The internal voice of the Association from 2011 to 2014 was the *VDB-Mitteilungen*, published twice a year in print and available on the VDB website. Publication ceased in 2014 with the advent of the Open Access journal o-bib. Further announcements were published in the Association's former organ, the *Zeitschrift*

für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie – ZfBB (Journal of Librarianship and Bibliography). The VDB's best-known publication is the biennial Yearbook of German Libraries (*Jahrbuch der Deutschen Bibliotheken*), first published in 1902. It is divided into two sections: one with details and statistical data on academic and research libraries, and the second on individuals, hence fulfilling the function of a membership directory.

The VDB has organized the annual *Deutscher Bibliothekartag* (German Library Conference) since 1900; it is the most important professional conference and currently alternates with the BID's *Deutscher Bibliothekskongress* (German Library Congress), held every three years. The *Bibliothekartage* 2012 to 2016 took place in Berlin, Hamburg, Bremen and Nürnberg respectively. In 2017 the conference will be held in Frankfurt am Main. Up until the 97th *Deutscher Bibliothekartag* in Mannheim in 2008 the conference proceedings appeared as special issues or supplements to the *Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie*, published by Klostermann. Starting with the 98th *Deutscher Bibliothekartag* held in Erfurt in 2009 the proceedings were published by Olms as the series *Deutscher Bibliothekartag: Kongressbände*. From 2014 onwards the congress papers have appeared in the library journal o-bib under a Creative Commons Attribution Licence (CC-BY).

As a member of the BID the VDB also belongs to the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), the Ligue des Bibliothèques Européennes de Recherche (LIBER) and the European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations (EBLIDA). Independently of its links with these organisations the VDB is constantly striving to strengthen the contacts between its members and their colleagues in Germany and elsewhere, maintaining cordial relations with numerous foreign professional associations, particularly those of Germany's immediate neighbours. There are joint agreements between the VDB and the BIB with the Library Association of South Tirol (*Bibliotheksverband Südtirol – BVS*) and the Austrian Association of Librarians (*Vereinigung Österreichischer Bibliothekarinnen und Bibliothekare – VÖB*).

By 2017 around 3,000 public libraries in the German-speaking countries had already signed up for *Onleihe* (the name comes from a combination of 'online' and the German word for 'lend'), the majority members of one of the regional networks with up to 70 participating libraries. The ekz group leads the German-speaking market in the digital circulation of media such as e-books, e-papers, e-audios and e-videos. – Photo: ekz



**ekz Library Service, Reutlingen**

The library suppliers *ekz.bibliotheksservice GmbH* (ekz), founded at the suggestion of librarians in 1947 in Reutlingen (Baden-Württemberg), have a unique position among German national library institutions. The ekz is a commercial enterprise constituted as a limited company and targeting libraries in particular. 18 of its current 19 partners are public sector regional corporate bodies: Federal states, cities, and counties. They command over 32.9% of the stock and possess exclusive minority voting rights. The ekz Group currently has a staff of around 280 (in 2017) and is also one of the founding members of *Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V.* (BID).

The ekz's contribution to library development is through the sales of specially designed products and services for stock-building, classification, conservation, library equipment, fittings and interior design, and library organization. Although over the past decades the

ekz has mainly focused on public libraries in Germany, the last few years have seen a significant change: from its origins as primarily a book and library furniture supplier, the ekz has expanded to become one of the European market's leading library service providers at the onset of the 21st century, with a comprehensive range of media supply, library planning and consultancy services. The ekz has adapted successfully to current market trends by developing new services such as event sponsoring, training courses and staff qualification seminars.

The ekz has set itself the goal of offering libraries a one-stop service for all their needs, enabling them to mix and match individual products. The ekz is also making a name for itself as a data supply centre for public libraries with its bibliographic and indexing services. Media in print can be delivered quickly thanks to online ordering, and the cataloguing data can be transferred in machine-readable form to the purchasing library. All products can be viewed on the ekz's website, allowing potential customers to search the product range, submit enquiries and contact ekz staff. The ekz's editorial department participates in the production of the book review services





Among the most important products of the *ekz-bibliotheks-service GmbH* in Reutlingen (Baden-Württemberg) are still their various bookbinding services including laminated binding and cover reinforcement for paperbacks. Following the optimization of their logistics system, the ekz also modernized their fully-automated laminating machine at the end of 2005. Although it is capable of processing several thousand books a day, it is still necessary to finish off by hand before the books are ready for circulation. – Photo: ekz

(ID-Informationsdienste etc.) within the cooperative agreement (*Lektoratskooperation*) with the German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband e.V. – dbv*) and the Association of Information and Library Professionals (*Berufsverband Information Bibliothek e.V. – BIB*)

In the last few years, the ekz has equipped not only many public libraries, but also an increasing number of academic and research libraries, among them the *German National Library* in Frankfurt am Main, where the ekz supplied the open access shelving. It has also won a number of European library equipment contracts.

The ekz's flagship library conferences "Chances" and the spring trade fair "Inspirations", with their specialist lectures, are targeted at an international audience, their reputation extending far beyond the German borders. The training trade fair "Chances" has been held in various places since 2012 and concentrates on topics with a library focus, while "Inspirations" has taken place in Reutlingen since 2013 and presents the current range of the company's services and products. The library service provider also takes to the road

with its "ekz on tour", visiting a number of different cities and regions and presenting the latest developments to libraries directly on-site.

The establishment of branches in Austria and France bear witness to the European commitment of the ekz Group as a whole, including the NORIS Transportverpackungs-GmbH in Nuremberg. The purchase of the RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) specialists Easy-Check GmbH in Göppingen marked the ekz's entry into the library technology market and it has been supplying libraries with complete RFID self-issue and media anti-theft security solutions since 2006.

The service DiViBib GmbH, which markets the lending service (*Onleihe*) and the corresponding media licences Onleihe requires, is another move towards expansion. This subsidiary, founded in 2005, has been able to move the public library business model forward into the digital world of online lending services with Onleihe. By the beginning of 2007 nearly 3,000 public libraries, mostly members of regional networks with up to 70 participating libraries, had signed up for Onleihe. With its DiViBib service the ekz Group leads the German-speaking market for digital internet-based lending services for e-books, e-papers, e-audios and e-videos. In 2016 the Médiathèques de l'Eurométropole de Strasbourg was the first public library system in France to adopt the ekz Group's Onleihe technology when it launched the project "l@ppli Books".

In 2016 the newly established subsidiary LMSCloud GmbH presented its open source application Koha, in combination with an extensive data pool, as a centrally hosted web-based library management solution. Warendorf City Library in North Rhine-Westphalia was the first German public library to offer this new service, which replaces the conventional web-based OPAC with a Discovery system.

#### **The Bertelsmann Foundation, Gütersloh**

The Bertelsmann Foundation was founded in 1977 by Reinhard Mohn. In the first few years its many studies and projects provided active support for public libraries, focusing on social, educational and economic issues. The



Foundation is perhaps best known for initiating the project "BIX—The Library Index", a ranking list of library operational data intended to help public and academic libraries evaluate their own performance and provide input for managerial decision-making to improve efficiency. The BIX index, which the knb continued to compile from 2007 to 2015, has since been discontinued.

Still worthy of particular mention is the Foundation's decision to prepare a major library strategy statement on the future development of libraries in Germany. The result of the project, which ran from 2002 until 2005 in cooperation with the BID, was the report "Library 2007" (*Bibliothek 2007*), which addressed a range of demands to the political decision-makers, who nevertheless chose to ignore them. A possible reason may have been the federalism reform of 2006/07, as a consequence of which the Federal Government withdrew its support for library funding. However, one of the strategy paper's main requirements—

The newly-erected City Library of Gütersloh (*Stadtbibliothek Gütersloh*) (North Rhine-Westphalia) was built in 1983 with the financial support of the Bertelsmann Foundation and was the first public library to be constituted as a limited liability company; the city of Gütersloh now holds 51% of the shares, the Bertelsmann Foundation 49%. 120,000 media occupy an area of approximately 2,500 m<sup>2</sup>. Located in the centre of the three-storey building and directly behind the circulation desk is the library café, inviting readers to drop in for refreshments. – Photo: D. Güthenke, Gütersloh

the establishment of a Library Development Agency (*Bibliotheksentwicklungsagentur – BEA*)—did at least find its way into the final report of the Parliamentary Committee of Inquiry "Culture in Germany" in 2007. In 2007 the Foundation withdrew from its active support of libraries and professional librarianship associations, now only occasionally participating in an advisory capacity.



### The Goethe Institute e.V., Munich

The *Goethe Institute e.V.* engages in activities in international cultural and educational relations on behalf of the German government. Its three main objectives are: to facilitate international cultural cooperation, to promote the German language abroad, and to convey a broad-based image of Germany by disseminating information on German cultural, social and political life. The Goethe Institute, which has its headquarters in Munich (and an office in the capital Berlin), is not a state institution, but a society subsidized by the Foreign Office. The Institute was founded in 1951 and following a merger with Inter Nationes (founded in 1952) in 2001 is the largest German cultural and educational institution in the world with a staff of some 3,500, of whom 2,800 are employed outside Germany. The GI has the legal status of a registered society, consisting of a members' council, a presidential committee and a board. The members' council is made up of representatives of the Federal and state governments, the Federal Parliament, and German cultural life. The seven members of the presidential committee include representatives from the Federal Foreign Office and the Federal Ministry of Finance. The board is chaired by the Secretary General and is responsible for day-to-day affairs. In 2015 the Goethe-Institute had an annual budget of 336 million Euros at its disposal, of which around 229 million Euros were funded by the Foreign Office; over 86 million Euros were raised by the Institute itself through its language courses and examinations in Germany and abroad, covering around 40% of its outgoings.

The Institute maintains branches in 12 cities within Germany and 159 cultural institutes in 98 countries, divided into 13 regions. In addition the Institute provides funding, advisory and quality assurance services for the 1,000 or so institutions belonging to the GI's partners all over the world. The Institutes offer language courses, hold examinations ("Start Deutsch"),

help teachers, universities and official bodies to promote the German language, award around 1,700 bursaries to German language teachers and provide their 108 network partners (40 German reading rooms, 10 Dialogpunkte Deutsch, 43 partner libraries and 15 information and learning centres) with up-to-date information material on Germany. In 2015 11 million people took part in the cultural programmes. Around 38,000 students from abroad took part in the language courses held at the 12 Institute branches within Germany itself. The Institute has so far provided funding for the translation of around 200 books into 40 languages. Each year the Goethe Institute awards the Goethe Medal, an official award of the Federal Republic of Germany to individuals for outstanding achievements in the promotion of the German language and intercultural exchange. The *Jahrbuch* (Yearbook) and the twice-yearly cultural magazine *Das Goethe* document the association's worldwide activities and cooperation programmes with its partners in the international network.

In the past few years the Goethe Institute has increased its activities in the field of information and library work with the objective of encouraging an international professional dialogue on the various concepts, methods, and applications of information and knowledge management, of library organization, and of training and continuing education. International cultural journals, books, information material on Germany, cinema and documentary films, and a wide range of online resources are available to interested users all over the world. The visitors' programme enables more than 1,200 opinion-makers from the press, media, and culture to visit Germany every year to update their knowledge.

Areas of the Institute's information and library work include:

- *Library cooperation and holdings indexes:* To encourage professional communication in the publishing, media and libraries sector, the Institute organizes professional conferences, workshops, study trips, training and continuing education events etc., in 97 library and information centres in conjunction with institutions in the host



The Library in the Polish capital Warsaw is only one example of the over 100 libraries and information centres maintained by the Goethe Institute. The Library's holding include current printed and audio-visual media in both German and other languages; other services include internet access, work-spaces and comfortable chairs inviting users to read and relax. Most Institutes offer language courses and author reading events. – Photo: A. Burakowski, Goethe Institute Warsaw

countries. The Institute headquarters in Munich provide individual libraries and information centres with lists of recent publications as selection guides for the overseas institutes, the chosen titles then being ordered directly by the institutes. All holdings are searchable in the online catalogue via the link [www.goethe.de/bibliothekskatalog](http://www.goethe.de/bibliothekskatalog) and the results can be filtered by location.

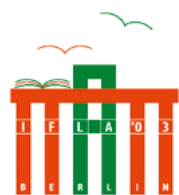
- *Literature and translation sponsorship:* The cultural institutes abroad promote German-language literature and finance translations, working closely with the press, publishers, book trade, and libraries in the host countries.
- *Qualified information and advisory service:* Fundamental to the international work of the Goethe Institute is the provision of

information on trends, events and publications, and the development of multimedia materials on aspects of German culture, current events and developments in Europe.

- *Information Management:* The Goethe Institute provides a wide range of up-to-date, high-quality media and effective and reliable services tailored to local needs, based not only in the libraries and information centres in the Institutes themselves but also in all 108 network partners listed above (reading rooms, Dialog Points, learning and information centres). These services are usually linked to local library structures, i.e. the "host library" provides space, its own infrastructure and German speaking library staff while the Goethe Institute provides a basic selection of appropriate media, updated annually, together with the necessary equipment and staff training.

### **The German Society for Information and Knowledge (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen e.V. – DGI*)**

The German Association for Information and Knowledge (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen e.V. – DGI*), founded in 1948 as the German Association for Documentation (*Deutsche Gesellschaft für Dokumentation*), is an academic and professional learned society for the advancement of research, teaching and practice in the area of information and documentation an association of German information specialists; in 2004 it was one of the founding members of the newly established umbrella association BID. Earlier, in the year 2000, the DGI and BDB had joined forces for the first time to co-host the congress as the 90th Library Congress and the 52nd Documentalist Conference in Leipzig with the title “Information and the Public.” Efforts to bring the two associations and their interests closer together ended on December 31st 2012 when the DGI unexpectedly decided to leave the BID.



### **International Cooperation**

Essential to the continuing positive development of librarianship in Germany is the regular transfer of knowledge between, and close cooperation with, partners here and abroad from all areas of library and information work. International cooperation has assumed an increasingly important role against a background of globalization, world-wide electronic networking, cross-border legislative regulation and the work of the associations, and finally the increasing mobility of library users.

In many areas decisions with far-reaching consequences for library work are now taken at a European or global rather than at national level, making it imperative that the interests of those involved be appropriately represented,

especially in fields such as copyright, e-books, access to information, and data protection.

The umbrella organization coordinates international goals and activities through a network of various associations, councils and libraries. The main organisational burden is borne by the BI-International, a BID standing committee responsible for the international exchange of expertise, the Network of Excellence for Libraries/International Cooperation of the dbv, and the Goethe Institute with its world-wide network of around 100 libraries. The BI-International (BI) also subsidises the many colleagues from overseas keenly interested in an exchange with a German library, who wish to attend an international conference or a Library Congress in Germany, or who are planning a study tour. German librarians too receive financial support from the BI, enabling them to spend time abroad, go on study trips or attend conferences.

The field of international cooperation in the knb within the dbv is an important address for those seeking help to develop innovative and creative ideas for knowledge transfer and networking between German libraries: The knb maintains a constant flow of information on current developments and trends to professional librarians in Germany, provides support for bilateral cooperation between associations, addresses the needs of young librarians and seeks to foster international exchange as a means of implementing the United Nations Agenda 2030. A further key aspect is the representation of library interests on European and international committees, including those outside librarianship.

As a result of political developments in Europe, there has since the end of the 20th century been a shift of those areas of expertise of particular relevance for German librarianship from German to European institutions. Issues relating to lending and copyright are subject to the European legislative process. Library-related areas such as the visibility of libraries, their contribution to the democratic process in view of rising extreme right-wing and nationalist tendencies, political participation and social development or digital strategy have now attained a European or international dimension.

The representatives of national German librarianship campaign alongside the international library association IFLA for net neutrality, the right to be forgotten (on social media) and freedom of access to information. Following on from the results of the WSIS (World Summits on the Information Society) and the Internet Governance Forum (IGF), IFLA has focused its efforts on defining the global role of libraries and ensuring their inclusion in the sustainability goals envisaged by the UN Agenda 2030.

In addition to the five professional associations, around 70 German library institutions and individuals are members of the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA), the international umbrella organization for libraries founded in 1927 in Glasgow. Elected German delegates sit in nearly all of IFLA's 47 specialist subgroups, sections and core activities circles. At top management level, representatives of German librarianship regularly sit on IFLA's Governing Board. IFLA's headquarters are located in The Hague; the annual conference is staged at various venues all over the world. In 2017 it will take place in Wrocław (Breslau) in Poland, and in 2018 the venue will be Kuala Lumpur. From 2007–2009 Claudia Lux held office as the third German president, succeeding Gustav Hoffmann (1958–1963) and Hans-Peter Geh (1985–1991).

The committee *Freedom of Access to Information and Freedom of Expression* (FAIFE), consisting of four of IFLA's most important working groups, focuses its attention on the role and responsibility of libraries in the conflicting areas of freedom of access to information, censorship, corruption, ethical issues and freedom of opinion.

The IFLA National Committee was formed in 1974 to coordinate German participation in the organization; its headquarters has been located in the International Cooperation department of the knb within the dbv in Berlin since 2004. Among its members are the constituent associations of the BID, the German Association of Special Libraries (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Spezialbibliotheken – ASpB*), the German National Library, the State Libraries in Berlin and Munich, the Saxonian State Library—State and University Library of Dresden (*Sächsische*

*Landesbibliothek – Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Dresden*), and the Goethe Institute. The DFG subsidizes the IFLA membership of these associations and BI International provides regular financial support to enable academic librarians to attend the IFLA conferences. The IFLA National Committee keeps IFLA members in Germany up-to-date via its website and mailing lists, coordinates the nomination of delegates to the IFLA committees, commissions translations and the online publication of important IFLA documents, and organises webinars and events on IFLA issues at the Library Congresses.

At European level, the German library associations are represented by the *European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations – EBLIDA*, an umbrella group founded in 1992 in the Hague to lobby for the interests of the library associations and institutions, documentation and information centres, and archives in Europe. EBLIDA members include representatives of the professional associations of all European countries. The main focus of the group is to ensure continuing freedom of access to information and underpin the role of libraries as essential service providers and guides through the information labyrinth.

Expertise groups are responsible for drafting reports and policy statements on questions of digital literacy, copyright and other legislative areas (EGIL), and for lobby work. EBLIDA maintains a ‘Knowledge and Information Centre’ (KIC) and coordinates its European lobby activities closely with those of IFLA.

NAPLE (*National Authorities on Public Libraries in Europe*) was founded in 2002 by a group of national European library administration organizations. It has set itself the goal of promoting the strategic development of the political and administrative strata of public libraries in Europe. Joint international library conferences have been an integral part of NAPLE and EBLIDA's members' meetings since 2009; EBLIDA has also organized joint conferences or working groups with LIBER.

The international coalition of academic and research libraries LIBER (*Ligue des Bibliothèques européennes de recherche = League of European Research Libraries*) was formed





The new Philology Library of the Free University of Berlin, inaugurated in 2005, was designed by the British architect Sir Norman Foster, well known for his spectacular buildings. The building was nicknamed “The Berlin Brain” on account of both its contents and its design. In 2006 it was awarded the renowned Berlin Prize for Architecture, only awarded every two years. The oval, balloon-shaped building houses eleven institutes and seminar libraries which had previously suffered from inadequate accommodation and staffing. The open access area has a capacity of 800,000 volumes and has 650 workspaces for library users.  
– Photo: P. v. Recklinghausen

under the aegis of the Council of Europe in 1971 and has taken the constitutional form of a foundation since 2009. Its members include a number of German state, regional and university libraries. LIBER has a membership of over 400 academic, national and university libraries in 45 countries, including almost 50 regional, state and university libraries in Germany. LIBER exists to help academic and research libraries in Europe build a functioning network across national borders. Common issues include Open Science, the preservation of the European cultural heritage, future-proofing of libraries and the development of innovative research environments. EU projects and annual conferences help to bring the member libraries together. For 2017–2018 notice has already been given that the training course *LIBER Emerging Leaders Programme* will again take place; the course aims to give future leaders working in the academic library sector the opportunity of improving their management and leadership skills by taking part in seminars and gaining practical experience in Greek and French libraries.

The Conference of European National Librarians (CENL) is an independent network comprising 48 member libraries in 46 of the countries with seats in the Council of Europe. Its purpose is to heighten awareness of the cultural assets preserved within the national libraries and to use appropriate media tools

and services to foster an appreciation of the common European heritage. CENL laid the foundation for the *Europeana* with the “European Digital Library”. Europeana went online in 2008, with the goal of making the European cultural and scholarly heritage available to the public. The project receives partial funding from the European Commission and is a foundation of the Dutch National Library.

German libraries draw increasingly on EU funding programmes to advance their digitization projects, expand the scope of their services and safeguard the cultural diversity of their member countries and regions as defined by the UNESCO Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions. Among the EU support programmes with relevance for libraries are the research framework programme ‘Horizon’ with a time-span of 2014–2020, the grants scheme for study abroad for students, trainees and volunteers, and the

bundle of adult education measures known since 2014 as “Erasmus+”.

The EU project advisory office was established at the German Library Association (*dbv*) in 2012 following a resolution made by the knb governing council. Its remit was expanded to include advising libraries on EU and third-party funding, i.e. on sources of financial support at European, national, regional and local level. In view of the plethora of potential funding sources for libraries one of the main purposes of the advisory office is to pass on the appropriate detailed criteria and information.

It remains to stress that the practical discrepancy between the goal of motivating and encouraging libraries to apply for EU funding and the reality within the institutions concerned is considerable, as indeed the knb admits. There is often a shortage of resources, or the courage needed to fulfil the staffing and funding requirements of an EU project is simply lacking. This leads to a shift in the main focus of the advisory office towards promoting networking activities on the one hand and providing low-threshold incentives for recruiting partners for various cooperative projects on the other, centering chiefly on public foundations or trusts at regional and local level.

Starting in 2017, the Council of the European Union is planning to fund a programme of free internet access provision at local municipal level with the initiative “WiFu4EU”. The budget is expected to be 120 million euros and will be used to set up fast public WiFi hotspots in places like libraries, parks and public buildings. Between 6,000 and 80,000 communities are expected to have taken advantage of this chance by 2020. The budget model consists of a simply credit voucher system. European cities can apply for funding to the EU and receive a voucher which can then be redeemed with the appropriate telecommunications company in exchange for the extension and maintenance of the WiFi network. The voucher is then returned to the EU, which pays the company for the work. More information on these and other EU and national third-party programmes can be found on the knb’s library gateway.



## 5 LIBRARY COOPERATION IN GERMANY

### Cooperation within Local, Regional and National Services

Intensive and successful cooperation within the German library system is by no means a recent phenomenon. Its roots go back to Prussia at the beginning of the 20th century and this tradition was later to be continued in the German Empire. The economic problems caused by First World War and the immense losses wreaked by the Second had already led librarians to seek new areas of cooperative effort. However, it was not until the expansion of the educational sector during the 1960's and the vast increase in demands for literature provision and information services that any attempt was made to introduce a measure of rational planning into the development of the German library system. The introduction of data processing and the expansion of electronic networks gave new impetus to the idea of cooperation and made it clear that the age of the Digital Library was dawning.

### The Principles of Library Cooperation

In 1964 the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*), the most highly respected among the advisory bodies in academic research and technology, published its "Recommendations for the Development of Academic and Research Libraries" (*Empfehlungen zum Ausbau der wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken*). These encompassed not only fundamental ideas on the future structure of the academic library system in the contemporary Federal Republic, but also concrete recommendations for 82 individual libraries together with budgeting models for university libraries. Furthermore, the recommendations set the ball rolling on important projects such as the establishment of textbook collections and the creation of inner-university union catalogues. They also encouraged the development both of overall planning concepts and of individual measures,



such as models for the assessment of budget, staff and space requirements.

Lacking a central agency responsible for the German library system in its entirety, the German Library Conference (*Deutsche Bibliothekskonferenz*), at that time the top-level organization in academic and public libraries, acted on its own initiative and produced the structural development plan "Library Plan '73" (*Bibliothekspan '73*). As its subtitle indicates, the plan was intended as an "outline plan for the development of a comprehensive library network in the Federal Republic of Germany." It assumed that the "continually increasing demands made on all areas of general education, vocational training, teaching, and research" could only be met "if all forms of literature, which will continue to form the basis for learning in the future, are made available together with other information sources to everyone, everywhere". The only way of achieving this goal, it was concluded, was through the unification of the library system and the cooperative efforts of all the libraries involved. The Library Plan '73 was drawn up after consultation with the German Association of Towns and Cities (*Deutscher Städtetag*).

The formal basis of interlibrary cooperation is still in principle the position paper "Libraries '93" (*Bibliotheken '93*), compiled by librarians from all over Germany and published by the Federation of German Library Associations (*Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände*) in 1993. It includes all types of libraries and has at last succeeded in breaking down the traditional notional barriers between the two opposing public and academic library poles. As in the previous plan, *Bibliotheken '73*, each type and size of library is assigned its individual place in the literature provision network, this position defining the library's aims, which in their turn determine the scope of the resources required. Functions of a global nature are best fulfilled by central agencies or organized on a cooperative interlibrary basis.

The necessity for joint action has been rendered more urgent by the decentralized structure of the German library system, the wide variety of funding agencies, the political and administrative framework of the federal state, the absence of a national planning and management authority, and many other factors. *Cooperation* has become a constitutional

In 1992 the Lower Saxony State and University Library of Göttingen (*Niedersächsische Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Göttingen*) moved into a modern building (architect: Gerber and Partner), enabling 1.5 million of its 4.2 million volumes to be placed on open access. The Library has taken on several areas of national responsibility including the administration of the Special Information Services Anglo-American culture, geo-sciences, and mathematics; it is also making confident advances in the direction of the Digital Library. In 2002 it was awarded the title "Library of the Year" by the dbv for its outstanding achievements. – Photo: SUB Göttingen

feature of the German library system, as can be demonstrated by the large number of collaborative projects and the many interlibrary working groups and associations. This points to the fact that the unusual structure of the German library system is by no means necessarily a disadvantage, but can, on the contrary, deliver impressive results if responsibilities are shared and cooperation properly planned. Nevertheless, cooperation is no compensation for deficient funding and no alternative to the establishment of central coordinating agencies.

There are two kinds of functions particularly suited to cooperative methods: those of national significance, for which a division of





While the Unter den Linden Building of the Berlin State Library – Prussian Cultural Heritage houses the Historical Research Library with literature published up until the turn of the 19th and 20th centuries, the building at Potsdamer Platz accommodates the Lending and Reference Library for literature published since then. The General Reading Room, providing a reference collection of 150,000 volumes spread over four floors and 800 work desks, is complemented by four additional subject specialist reading rooms: The Manuscript, Eastern European, Cartography, and Oriental and East Asian Reading Rooms. The library users are primarily students. – Photo: C. Seelbach

### Cooperation in Market Scanning and Acquisitions

Academic libraries have for many decades worked closely together in the field of acquisitions. There have also been isolated cases of cooperative acquisition projects in the public library sector too; for example, the large city libraries of North Rhine-Westphalia have agreed among themselves on the allocation of special acquisition responsibility for particular subject areas, with federal state funding. The projects described below are concerned with specific collection development. However, an increasing proportion of acquisition funds is being used for the purchase of usage rights. Like their counterparts abroad, German libraries have formed consortia for the cooperative licensing of electronic media. Particularly in the case of high-priced digital products, consortia agreements enable libraries to increase the number of titles on offer without overextending their acquisitions budgets.

#### ***The German Research Foundation and the Specialised Information Services Programme for Research***

The German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG) is the central autonomous body appointed to promote research in universities and publicly funded research institutions in Germany. It serves all academic disciplines by financing research projects and encouraging collaboration among researchers. The DFG was founded in 1949 to carry on the tradition initiated by the Emergency Council of German Science (*Notgemeinschaft der Deutschen Wissenschaft*) in 1920.



The new building of the Baden Regional Library (*Badische Landesbibliothek*) in Karlsruhe (Baden-Württemberg, architect: Oswald Mathias Ungers), radiates severity and assertive timelessness. The geometric centre of the building is the main reading room, featuring a dome in the style of 19th century reading rooms. The Baden Regional Library cooperates with other academic libraries in the region within the framework of EUCOR (European Confederation of the Universities of the Upper Rhine). – Photo: C. Seelbach

For this purpose the DFG receives grants from the central *Bund* and the regional *Länder*, with a small amount also coming from private sources. The DFG group “Academic Library Provision and Information Systems” (*Wissenschaftliche Literaturversorgungs- und Informationssysteme* – LIS) promotes the development of effective information services and innovative infrastructure systems attuned to the needs of researchers in German universities and research centres. The funding programmes, which had a total budget of around 45.2 million euros in 2016, concentrate on implementing long-term measures at national level in the following areas: The Specialised Information Services Programme, national licences, the acquisition of complete literary estates and collections, cataloguing and digitization, development of a suitable infrastructure for electronic publications and digital scholarly communica-

tion, Open Access publishing, e-research technologies, and information infrastructures for research data.

Until 2014 the core of the DFG’s library support programme was the system of national literature provision based on the following three types of libraries: universal libraries with special subject collection areas, special research libraries, and the Central Subject Libraries. Building on the 19th century model, the DFG developed a Special Subject Fields Collection Programme (*Sondersammelgebietsplan*) in 1949 for the academic library system. The Programme was drawn up to ensure that even during the difficult years of reconstruction following the Second World War at least one copy of every essential foreign work of research literature would be available in Germany. Over time the programme developed into a fully-fledged national literature provision system serving the interests of the scientific and research community. It underwent many changes but still remained true to the idea of a “Virtual National Library”.

Around 35 of Germany’s most efficient state and university libraries together with over 30 special libraries participated in a clearly defined system of around 110 subject or regionally oriented special acquisition fields. Following reunification, the former exclusively West German system was expanded; new subject areas were created and existing fields reallocated to include libraries in the former East German region. The task of the participating libraries was to build special subject collections in their allocated fields on a systematic basis and to make these available nationwide with the help of DFG funding. The subject field definitions were broad and included all forms of information media, including digital information media. The scope extended to non-German language periodicals, monographs and microforms published after 1950 and also encompasses non-German digital publications in both physical and online form.

The DFG had supported the funding of national licences for current periodicals, journals archives, databases and document collections for the Special Subject Fields since 2004, with the objective of providing researchers, students and others with scholarly interests with free





The new building, opened in 2002 (design: Ortner and Ortner) enabled the Saxon State and University Library to unite all its previously scattered separate departments (special collections, textbook collection, German Photographic Library) under one roof. Readers have a choice of 900 workspaces, 200 of which are in the spacious Reading Room. In 1993, the Saxon State and University Library took over responsibility for the DFG special subject field of contemporary art of the post-war era. – Photo: F. Bieler

access to databases, digital document collections and electronic periodicals. Nationwide access to the resources was offered not only by all German university and regional libraries but also some non-university institutions. A number of institutions signed licensing agreements with publishers, professional associations and other information suppliers and offered both libraries and individuals access on the basis of the agreed terms. The Alliance Licences, which replaced the national licences, enabled regional consortia to play a more active role in product selection.

Information on the DFG Special Subject Fields and the libraries to which they had been assigned, and on the range of Virtual Subject Libraries already established, could be obtained from the web-based information system *Webis*—Special Subject Field Acquisition in German Libraries, which was also a source of information on the idea of a decentralized digital research library. While the demands of the main disciplines medicine, science and technology, and economics were met by the Central Subject Libraries, the remaining subject areas were distributed among a large number of universal and special libraries. These were responsible either for individual subject fields, such as botany, forestry, psychology and theology, or for linguistic, cultural or geographical regions, such as Southern Africa, South Asia and Oceania or the languages of the Indian and Inuit peoples.

The literature acquired under the national literature provision programme was cata-

logged, subject-indexed and recorded in the regional and national union catalogues. In addition, it was disseminated to interested researchers in the form of special conventional or electronic publications, such as new acquisitions lists or periodical contents indexes. Although this literature was initially made available through the German interlibrary loan service, all subject field libraries, along with the Central Subject Libraries, then also went on to offer document delivery via the *subito* service. Easier access to the Special Subject Field holdings also accelerated the digitization of these resources.

From 1998 onwards the Special Subject Fields Collection system was augmented by the DFG-funded Virtual Subject Libraries programme, although it did not prove possible to cover all subject areas. The Virtual Subject Libraries were intended to provide access to printed materials and high-quality internet sources pertaining to their individual subject areas. The umbrella portal *Vascoda*—Internet Gateway for Academic Information, uniting the 40 or so Virtual Subject Libraries with the information networks provided a unified search interface. In addition to advanced search functions, *Vascoda* offered access to reliable information sources and full texts; it had been registered as a non-profit making organization since 2005, and had a membership of over 40 libraries, specialist information institutions and academic institutions before being discontinued in 2011. Many libraries hosting Virtual Subject Libraries are also part of the network *Academic LinkShare*



(ALS), dedicated to the cooperative indexing of research-related internet sources.

In view of far-reaching structural changes affecting both the academic publications market and research processes in the digital age the DFG conducted an in-depth evaluation and review of its Special Subject Fields programme at the start of 2014. The acquisition guidelines based on the continual accession of comprehensive collections were replaced by the Specialised Information Services Programme (*Fachinformationsdienste* – FID). The name of the new programme was chosen to convey the idea that library services focus on the concrete demands and current information needs of the relevant academic discipline, chiefly at top level. Instead of comprehensive, providential stock-building the new system concentrates on selective acquisition.

The FID programme is a departure from the previous acquisitions policy centred on continuity and sustainability. The emphasis on optimising access to information is new, by which is meant the focus is no longer on acquisition and archiving. This implies an improvement in location and search systems and other tech-

The notion of the makerspace has not only appealed to the larger city libraries, as for example in Cologne; academic libraries too have caught on to the idea. The photo shows the FabLab (Fabrication Laboratory at the Saxon State and University Library Dresden, a joint project run by the library, various departments at the Technical University, and the Creative Workshop, a peripatetic hi-tech workshop with 3-D printers and laser cutters. Makerspaces are like the “digital era hobby” – spaces for experimenting and creating something, anything, out of physical objects, and open to all. No longer must tech nerds labour alone in secret – here they can find others like themselves try out new techniques with them and exchange views. – Photo: L. Boxberger

nologically sophisticated and staff-intensive digital services. For this reason nearly half the total budget has been invested in staff. Another new feature is the policy of e-only, meaning that electronic versions of scholarly journals and other forms of literature have undisputed priority. It is planned to establish an Excellence Centre for Licensing to provide libraries with the necessary support when negotiating with publishers.

During a three-year interim period from 2013 to 2015 the programme targeted those institutions that had been responsible for a special subject area in the past. Since 2016 the





The historical Reading Room of Tübingen University Library in Baden-Württemberg, built in 1912 (architect: Paul Bonatz), is graced by a large mural depicting the struggle between the present and the wisdom of the past. Tübingen University Library, founded in 1477, is part of a two-tier library system and is responsible for the subject areas theology, religious studies and criminology from the Specialised Information Services programme. – Photo: C. Seelbach

programme has been open to all libraries that have shown an interest in subjects of any area as not hitherto included in the system. As the Specialised Information Service Programme is organised on a project basis, applicants will in future have to provide evidence of their continuing efficiency every three years. And since all measures are dependent on the proven interests and declared information needs of the researchers, first and subsequent applications must be closely coordinated with the scholarly community if they are to succeed. By the start of 2017 over 30 institutions had submitted successful applications, mostly university libraries but also including a number of state libraries and a few research institutes. The number of funded FID projects is currently 35. They cover 52 of the 69 special subject fields that had received funding until 2013.

The Special Subject Fields Collection Programme had defined German scholarly literature provision for decades and was in the eyes of international librarianship both exemplary and successful. Its discontinuation therefore meant a complete paradigm shift. The focus of the new programme benefits cutting-edge research, especially in the natural sciences. In contrast, in the humanities the advantages of long-term accessibility of comprehensive special collections still carries considerable weight. Material currently seen as unworthy of collection is no longer acquired, is invisible to research and cannot be retrospectively acquired in the case of a change of research focus. In the interests of the humanities some FID libraries

have therefore decided to adhere to the principle of a partially providential stock-building policy and to budget accordingly.

#### ***The Collection of German Imprints (Sammlung Deutscher Drucke)***

While the large national libraries of other countries house comprehensive collections of their own national literature, Germany first established a central archive of printed German culture with the founding of the *Deutsche Bücherei* in 1912. The member libraries of the Working Group on the Collection of German Imprints (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*), set up in 1989 and generously supported with 12.5 million euros for the first ten years by the Volkswagen Foundation (*Volkswagen-Stiftung*), have set themselves the task of systematically completing the fragmentary records of materials published in German-speaking countries up until 1912. From publication year 1913 onwards, the German National Library (*Deutsche Nationalbibliothek*) has been able to continue the Collection of German Imprints on the basis of its legal deposit copies. It has thus been possible to create an increasingly complete virtual national library.

Acquisition responsibilities have been divided among the participating libraries on a chronological basis. The individual segments have been allocated to those libraries already possessing substantial holdings from the period in question. The six member libraries of the Working Group are responsible for the following periods:

- 1450–1600: Bavarian State Library, Munich
- 1601–1700: Duke August Library, Wolfenbüttel
- 1701–1800: State Library of Lower Saxony and University Library of Göttingen
- 1801–1870: University Library Johann Christian Senckenberg in Frankfurt am Main
- 1871–1912: State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage
- 1913 to present: German National Library

Each of the member libraries acquires for its allocated period all printed material published in German-speaking countries and all material in the German language, regardless of where it was published. This remit also includes printed music published before 1800, assigned to the Bavarian State Library, and between 1801 and 1945, assigned to the State Library of Berlin, which is also responsible for maps and newspapers published between 1801 and 1912. Priority is given to the purchase of imprints not yet available in a freely accessible German library. All printed materials acquired through the project are registered in the national catalogue databases and can thus be searched worldwide on the internet. In many cases, the historical imprints are in need of special preservation measures; in addition, the question of filming or digitalizing a document may also have to be considered.

Even though around 200,000 works have been acquired in their original print form and more than 40,000 on microfilm, the development of this virtual national library still has a long way to go. It is impossible to say how many books have been published in Germany since the invention of letter-press printing. Estimates have indicated that several more decades of collection at the present level will be necessary, making the *Sammlung Deutscher Drucke* a project of monumental dimensions.

The Duke August Library (*Herzog August Bibliothek*) in Wolfenbüttel (Lower Saxony) was founded in 1572 by Duke August, and by the 17th century was one of the largest collections of literature in Europe. Today it is a centre for the research and study of European cultural history. The core collection, containing about 135,000 titles, is housed in the museum-like Augusteerrhalle of the Bibliotheca Augusta (built between 1884 and 1887), the central building of the Wolfenbüttel library complex. – Photo: Duke August Library

#### ***Book Review Cooperation in Public Libraries (Lektoratskooperation)***

The *Lektoratskooperation* (LK), an inestimable aid to collection development in public libraries, was initiated in 1976. A festschrift published in 2016 to commemorate the LK's 40th anniversary documents its history and presents memories and statements as *Facets and Future of an Idea*. The LK aims to reduce duplicate effort in the task of choosing print and non-book media. Its main objective is to aid public libraries in evaluating the more than 90,000 new media published every year in Germany and to help them decide which titles to order.

The *Lektoratskooperation* combines the advantages of a decentralized, practice-oriented market evaluation system with the efficiency of a centrally organized reviewing resource. Participatory bodies are the German Library Association (*Deutscher Bibliotheksverband – dbv*) with around 80 subject specialists (*Lektoren*)



in about 60 libraries, the Association of Information and Library Professionals (*Berufsverband Information Bibliothek* – BIB) with around 230 freelance reviewers, and the library supplier *ekz.bibliotheksservice GmbH*, whose review department has adopted an overall executive function as coordinator. The LK itself is overseen by three bodies: the board and a steering committee acting as a clearing-house, both of which include members of the three partner institutions, and the executive. The task of the member editors is to critically view and evaluate new non-fiction titles, while the reviewers screen literature for children and young people, fiction and audio and non-book media. The *ekz* review staff are responsible for scanning the market and for the postal distribution of the media to be evaluated together with the subsequent publication of the review texts. Around 20,000 titles are received by the *ekz*; of these around 15,000 are pre-selected for distribution to the editors and reviewers. Their feedback forms the basis of a number of review services.

Libraries can subscribe to these evaluation services for a fee. The complete, limited, and selected editions of the *ekz* Information Service (*Informationsdienst* – ID) are published at various intervals. The weekly “full edition” of the *ID*, containing 15,000 titles annually, is aimed at large and medium-sized city library systems with specialized collections. The *ID* weekly “basic edition” with 11,000 titles each year is for the libraries of medium-sized towns with correspondingly smaller acquisition budgets. The *ekz*’s parallel monthly publication “BA. Reviews and Annotations” (*BA. Besprechungen und Annotationen*), an excerpt of the basic edition, ceased publication at the end of 2010. The weekly “selected edition” of the *ID* contains 8,000 titles per year. The weekly “*ID 3000*” with around 3,000 individually selected appraisals is targeted at public libraries in small towns and communities of less than 10,000 inhabitants. The bi-monthly *ID 1000* containing 1,000 reviews is distributed to smaller and volunteer-run libraries independently of their budget. Since 2007 these same libraries have been able to subscribe to “*BibTipp*” a twice-yearly list of recommended titles published by the state library agencies and containing around 1,500 book reviews of printed and audio books. The publi-

cation “New Books for Schools” (*Neue Bücher für Schulen*) appears twice a year and contains notes on around 400 titles suitable for primary and secondary levels.

There are two ID editions for non-book media: the weekly ID Non-book Complete (*ID Nonbook groß*) containing details of 5,000 new titles, and the fortnightly ID Non-book Abridged (*ID Nonbook klein*) with about 1,000 titles. Electronic cataloguing data for all the above-mentioned ID publications can be separately ordered, either as a complete or selective package. All the adult non-fiction titles are ranked according to one of four recommendation levels, ranging from (1) Priority to (4) Conditional Recommendation.

In addition, numerous standing order offers arranged by subject and on a sliding financial scale enable libraries to use those *ekz* central services resulting from the *Lektoratskooperation* for current collection development at the local level. This opportunity saves libraries both time and money at a time when the increasing scarcity of staff resources is of considerable significance, although some librarians have criticised the service.

Public libraries profit from a subscription to the *ekz* Information Service in several ways. Firstly, they receive recommendations and references they can use to develop their own collections. Secondly, they can take advantage of the *ekz*’s other services, such as the cataloguing records and subject headings of the German National Library, or the classification notations of the four most frequently used public library classification schemes (ASB, SSD, KAB, SFB). Thanks to the increasing deployment of modern information technology, the organizationally and logistically challenging system works remarkable quickly and well, delivering up-to-the-minute appraisals and reviews.

### Cooperation in Cataloguing and Subject Indexing

Cooperation in the cataloguing sector or the exploitation of central services are only possible if participating libraries agree on a common set of cataloguing rules. Examples of such rules are the Descriptive Cataloguing Rules (*Regeln für die alphabetische Katalogisierung* – RAK),



The large city libraries under Sections 1 and 2 of the German Library Association classification (cities with over 100,000 inhabitants) are especially active participants in the cooperative book evaluation scheme. The City Library of Würzburg, extended in 2001, is responsible for the evaluation of the subject area Geography. In 2009 it was one of the first public libraries to introduce the “Onleihe” (online checkout) system, allowing the downloading of digital media for a limited time. – Photo: K. Trutzki

widely used in German academic and public libraries, and the Subject Cataloguing Rules (*Regeln für die Schlagwortkatalogisierung* – RSWK), used by many research libraries.

The task of indexing the so-called metadata is greatly facilitated by the Universal Authority File (*Gemeinsame Normdatei* – GND), which lists standardised entries for persons, corporate bodies, conferences, regions, subject terms and titles. Though intended for library cataloguers it is being increasingly used by archives, museums, projects and web applications, and in 2015 included around 11.3 million records. The GND data are available under a CC licence free of charge to anyone and can be accessed in a variety of ways. In 2012 the GND replaced the existing Name Authority File (*Personennamendatei* – PND), Subject Headings Authority File (*Schlagwortnormdatei* – SWD), Corporate Body Authority File (*Gemeinsame Körper-*

*schaftsdatei* – GKD) and Uniform Title File of the German Music Archive (DMA-EST). In 2014 it was adapted to comply with the Entities of the new RDA cataloguing rules. Like its forerunners the GND is run by the authority file users on a cooperative basis and is hosted by the DNB. The Committee for Library Standards is responsible for the strategic management of the GND, with day-to-day business having been handled since 2017 by a GND cooperative committee.

The production of standardised formal rules and the creation and maintenance of comprehensive authority files are not only a prerequisite for successful cooperation between the libraries of the German-speaking countries but also an example of it.

Of course it had always been possible to utilise external services in a conventional cataloguing environment, as was indeed often the case, but they first came into their own when combined with data processing in formal and subject cataloguing. Only when the German National Library in Frankfurt am Main developed the German Machine Readable Exchange Format for Libraries (*Maschinelles Austauschformat für Bibliotheken* – MAB) in the 1980s was the foundation laid for the reciprocal use of machine-readable catalogue data.



Starting with the bibliographic year 2009 the German National Library began delivering its data in the MARC 21 format. The preparatory work had been already completed by the cooperative project “Changing to MARC 21” (*Umstieg auf MARC 21*).

The German National Library is the leading supplier of bibliographic services, delivering over 100 million current records per year. Until 2016 catalogue entries for all titles in the various German National Bibliography (*Deutsche Nationalbibliographie*) series were generated according to the Descriptive Cataloguing Rules for Academic and Research Libraries (*Regeln für die alphabetische Katalogisierung in wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken* – RAK-WB), then subsequently in compliance with the RDA cataloguing rules; the entries are available for order in conventional or electronic form. Subject terms or headings generated in accordance with the *RSWK* have been included since 1986 in all subject-indexed new title records. In 2006 the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) was introduced as an additional subject-cataloguing instrument.

In 2004, the Committee for Library Standards announced its decision to take an active part in the compilation of the new cataloguing guidelines *Resource Description and Access* (RDA), designed for international use. It is hoped that catalogues compiled on the basis of the RDA can make an important contribution to the development of the “Semantic Web” by linking terms, names and descriptions semantically and thus enabling search engines to do more than merely compare character strings, while at the same time paving the way for more intelligent search methods. The changeover to RDA in the German-speaking countries took place within the framework of a cooperative project. The German National Library is closely involved in the further development of international standards, nominating the Europe Regional Representative in the RDA Steering Committee and collaborating with the governing board of the European RDA Interest Group and IFLA’s committees.

### **The Regional Library Network Systems**

The idea behind the regional network systems created in the 1970s was that libraries should be able to use data generated by other libraries

to facilitate the cataloguing of their own new acquisitions. The cooperative exchange of cataloguing records, initially limited to descriptive data, but later extended to include subject indexing, has had a considerable rationalization effect on book processing. In addition, comprehensive record files were created which have proved of inestimable value as search tools in the management of interlibrary lending.

The library networks were originally regionally based, but have developed over the years into institutions spanning the *Länder* borders. Though initially their main objective was the cooperative development of a common catalogue database, the networks have since taken on new responsibilities and expanded their services to become competitors in the information technology market. Examples of the networks’ activities are the maintenance of union catalogues as records of older monograph titles held in the region and the later conversion of these catalogues into machine-readable form (retrospective conversion), the planning and management of the IT development within a regional network, support for the operation of local systems, and the implementation of document delivery systems. Further fields include the development of digital libraries, catalogue enrichment, table of contents services for journals, hosting services for local library publications and archive systems, open access repositories, consortial licencing programmes for commercial databases, full text services and e-books, research data management and long-term archiving provision.

For example, the HBZ in Cologne also hosts open access publications (Digital Peer Publishing) and compiles the German Library Statistics on behalf of the knb. The BSZ in Konstanz hosted the German Internet Bibliothek from 2008 to 2013, developed the virtual enquiries desk *InfoDesk* currently in active use in a number of academic libraries, and from 2001 to 2015 hosted the culture gateway BAM, one of the first of its kind in the German-speaking area. The BAM portal was a pioneer of data presentation, transcending the boundaries between libraries, archives and museum, but its importance waned with the creation of the German Digital Library.

However, the main job of the library networks is still the maintenance of library com-

puter centres. These centres are responsible for the upkeep of the network’s online union catalogues, which the members use as central cataloguing and search instruments supplying data to their local systems. Today the vast majority of academic libraries are members of one of the regional networks. The map and table indicate the technical systems employed by the federal states, and their relative holdings.

Cooperation between the library networks has been organized since 1983 by the Working Association (AGV) with its secretariat at the German National Library. The AGV has two standing working groups, one for lending services and one for cooperative library network applications. In spite of this cooperative pool the library networks have not yet managed to exchange their catalogue data or even to set up a national network database. They are however striving to develop shared interfaces and to create unique identifiers for data records. Since 2010 the networks and the DNB have exchanged the scanned tables of contents, blurb, indexes etc. generated for catalogue enrichment. Most networks supply their data to the OCLC database WorldCat.

Both the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*) and the German Research Foundation DFG have looked at the future of the library networks, coming to similar conclusions; these were published in 2011 as the joint statement “The Future of the Library Networks as part of the German National Information Infrastructure” (*Zur Zukunft der Bibliotheksverbünde als Teil einer überregionalen Informationsinfrastruktur in Deutschland*). In view of the duplication of services caused by parallel operations the statement strongly recommended a radical reform of the library network system in favour of unifying core services. In particular it called for a reduction in the number of networks from the current six, the merging of the various location search systems into one unified location tool and the pooling of resources to develop innovative, open systems reaching across the networks and sharing the workload. In addition the suggestion was made to create a DFG-funded project to kick-start the necessary changes within the library networks, and this project was announced in 2012.

Five years later the restructuring of the German library network system is still a work in progress and the results at best provisional. Two different project-based models for the future of the library networks have been posited, one concentrating on library data infrastructure, the other on local library systems.

The project “Cloud-based Infrastructure for Library Data” (*Cloudbasierte Infrastruktur für Bibliotheksdaten* – CIB) involving the networks in Bavaria (BVB), Hesse (HEBIS) and Berlin-Brandenburg (KOBV), directed its efforts at standardising library location records by combining the metadata of German libraries on cloud-based international platforms similar to those employed by OCLC for WorldCat or the company Ex Libris for its special network zones. Both these leading suppliers of local library systems have opted for virtual system environments, the Cloud platforms Alma and WorldShare Management Services, as the basis for a “New Generation of Library Systems”.

However it transpired that a lack of synchronisation prevented the simultaneous transfer of all library-related processes to the two cloud-based system platforms that had been the original project goal. The project was therefore abandoned as a non-starter. Instead, the CIB Consortium recommended that primary cataloguing take place in OCLC’s WorldCat as the sole available—albeit extremely expensive—explicitly international cataloguing resource. This was hardly what had been intended by a reform of the German library network system.

The alternative Modell “libOS—Library Operating System: An Open Platform for Cataloguing, Holdings and Library Services” favoured by the remaining library networks (Library Service Centre Baden-Württemberg—BSZ, the Common Library Network—GBV, the University Library Service Centre—HBZ, and the German National Library envisages merging the regional network databases to form a single national data platform offering its data as Linked Open Data and facilitating international connectivity whilst maintaining non-proprietary status.

Independently of such ambitious designs for the future the BSZ and the central office of the GBV, already strategic partners since 2014, are



Regional Library Network Systems in Germany, 2017  
(Table notes on page 129)

planning to merge their data holdings (23 and 55 million records respectively, with 70 and 105 location IDs) and to agree on a functional coordination of their library services. This will mean that by the end of 2017 a common library network catalogue will have been created across ten federal states plus the Foundation of the Prussian Cultural Heritage, containing 175 million holdings records.

The lack of a national union catalogue is compensated for by the “Karlsruhe Virtual Catalogue” (*Karlsruher Virtueller Katalog* – KVK), maintained by the library KIT (Karlsruhe Institute of Technology). The KVK, established in 1996, links the regional union catalogues independently of their various software platforms to form a virtual union catalogue. The KVK search interface allows parallel searching in around 70 library and book trade catalogues in addition to the regional network catalogues. The pool includes WorldCat, the union catalogues of Great Britain and France, and the database of the internet booksellers

Amazon. It is now also possible to search for digital media. Aggregators such as the German or the European Digital Library, or the Central Index of Digitised Printed Works (*Zentrales Verzeichnis Digitalisierter Drucke* – ZVDD), can be selected alongside the American Internet Archive, the electronic editions available under the DFG national licensing scheme and two Open Access directories for books and journals. Further search options are Google Books and the European Register of Microform and Digital Masters (EROMM).

The KVK is now one of the most important search instruments in the Federal Republic and is consulted by over 1.5 million users each month, reportedly providing access to over 80 million books and journals. Several similar virtual catalogues based on the idea and technology of the KVK have since been realized by the KIT Library for individual regions (e.g. Rhineland-Palatinate and Switzerland), subject fields (e.g. theology and ecclesiology), geographical literature areas (e.g. *Länder* bibliographies) and media types (e.g. videos).

Equally popular is the Digital Library (DigiBib), developed by the University Library Service Centre in Cologne, hosted jointly by the university libraries in North Rhine-Westphalia and Rhineland-Palatinate and open to the participation of any state-owned public library in Germany, Austria and the German-speaking regions of Switzerland and Luxembourg. The current DigiBib Release 6 has a modern, barrier-free user interface with a simple single-field search option enabling the user to search simultaneously in over 300 library catalogues, full-text servers, internet search engines and literature databases from all over the world. Additional advanced functions, search engine technology, various forms of catalogue enrichment and Web 2.0 features (export to literature management systems such as BibSonomy, RefWorks, bookmarking and sharing services etc.) complete the range of features.

If the target text is found, the user will be informed whether it is available online, via a document delivery service, in a library or for sale in an online bookshop. If it cannot be retrieved, links will guide the user by subject to online databases (e.g. dictionaries and subject databases) or to high-quality web sites. Members

| Library Network and Headquarters   | Software  | Regions  | Libraries and Holdings  |
|--|-----------|--|---|
| Common Library Network, Göttingen (GBV)<br>Headquarters: State and Univ. Library Göttingen GREEN   | OCLC PICA | Bremen, Hamburg, Mecklenburg-Vorpommern, Lower Saxony, Saxony-Anhalt, Schleswig-Holstein, Thuringia und libraries of the State Library of Berlin | 430 participants (university, state and public libraries), holdings information on 100.5 m copies of 40 m titles  |
| Berlin-Brandenburg Co-operative Library Network (KOBV).<br>Headquarters: Zuse Institute Berlin, YELLOW   | ALEPH     | Berlin and Brandenburg   | 250 participants (university, public, research centre and special libraries), holdings information on 20 m copies of 12 m titles, successively integrated into the database of the Bavarian Library Network |
| HBZ Network hosted at the North Rhine-Palatinate University Library Service Centre in Cologne (headquarters) DEEP RED  | ALEPH     | North Rhine-Westphalia, Rhineland-Palatinate (excluding Rhinehesse with Mainz and Worms)   | 55 participants (university, state, public libraries), holdings information on 42 copies of 19 m titles   |
| Hesse Library Information System (HeBIS), Frankfurt am Main.<br>Headquarters: Johann Christian Senckenberg University Library Frankfurt am Main, LIGHT GREEN | OCLC PICA | Hesse, with cooperation partner Rhinehesse (in Rhineland-Palatinate)   | 492 participants (university, state libraries), holdings information on 29.5 m copies of 10 m titles  |
| Southwestern Library Network (SWB) Library Service Centre Baden-Württemberg (BSZ), Konstanz (headquarters), GREY   | OCLC PICA | Baden-Württemberg, Saarland, Saxony (Saxon Library Network), Libraries of the Goethe Institutes and the Max Planck Institutes                    | 1,200 participants (university, state libraries), holdings information on 65 copies of 20 m titles  |
| Bavarian Library Network (BVB),<br>Headquarters: Bavarian State Library Munich, PINK   | ALEPH     | Bavaria  | 150 participants (university, state, special libraries), holdings information on 48 m copies of 23 m titles   |
| Special case: Berlin Public Libraries Network (VÖBB),<br>Headquarters: VÖBB Service Centre   | ADIS/BMS  | Berlin districts   | 102 participants (public and mobile libraries in Berlins 12 districts, school libraries, Central and Regional Library Berlin, Senate library). Holdings searchable in KOBV                                  |



The search interface of the Karlsruhe Virtual Catalogue at <https://kvk.bibliothek.kit.edu/> is also available in four other languages.

of the university and registered library users can access free databases and full-text sources plus any others licensed by the library they happen to be in via the “authenticated DigiBib login” from within the internal network of the participating library. Guest users from anywhere in the world can access all free databases and full-text sources via the external login facility. In addition the HBZ’s “Three Nations Catalogue” (*Dreiländerkatalog*) can be used to search the library collections of the entire German-speaking area. In 2015 the catalogue contained around 45 million entries including data from North Rhine-Westphalia/Rhineland-Palatinate, Bavaria, North and Central Germany, and Austria.

## Periodicals Indexes

### The National Periodicals Database (ZDB)

Whereas monograph cataloguing is organized decentrally within the regional library network system, provision was made from the outset for a single countrywide system for periodicals, the National Periodicals Database (*Zeitschriftendatenbank* – ZDB), now able to celebrate forty years of success in the German library landscape. When the ZDB was founded with the financial help of the German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft* – DFG), the number of participating libraries was small. In the meantime 4,300

institutions are involved in its development and upkeep. Around 170 of the larger libraries, some of them in Austria, catalogue their print and electronic journal titles and location details directly in the database. The ZDB currently includes 15.6 million holdings records for over 1.5 million titles, of which over 500,000 are current publications. The editorial office employs data maintenance and standardization to guarantee the quality and consistence of the title records. Owing to the high standard of its bibliographical records, the ZDB has achieved the status of an authority file for the formal cataloguing of periodical titles, an achievement which together with the cooperative nature of its operation has led to an efficient division of labour between the participation libraries. The functionality of the ZDB’s online catalogue has been constantly improved over the years but the version currently available online still only has beta status.

The ZDB is managed jointly by the State Library in Berlin and the German National Library. The SBB is not only accountable for the work of the editorial office but also for the further development of the ZDB together with its partner, the DNB. All libraries and institutions are welcome to contribute to the ZDB. For several years now the metadata have been freely available under the Creative Commons CCo licence, which includes commercial use. This means that holdings can be used for all kinds of formats and interfaces. Over the years the ZDB holdings have been incorporated into countless national catalogue systems.

Title and holdings details are passed back to the library networks, so that besides being recorded in the central ZDB they are also listed in the regional databases and local online catalogues. The national character of the ZDB means that its data can be used for other purposes, such as the management of German interlibrary lending, the coordination of holdings maintenance measures and collections development in libraries.

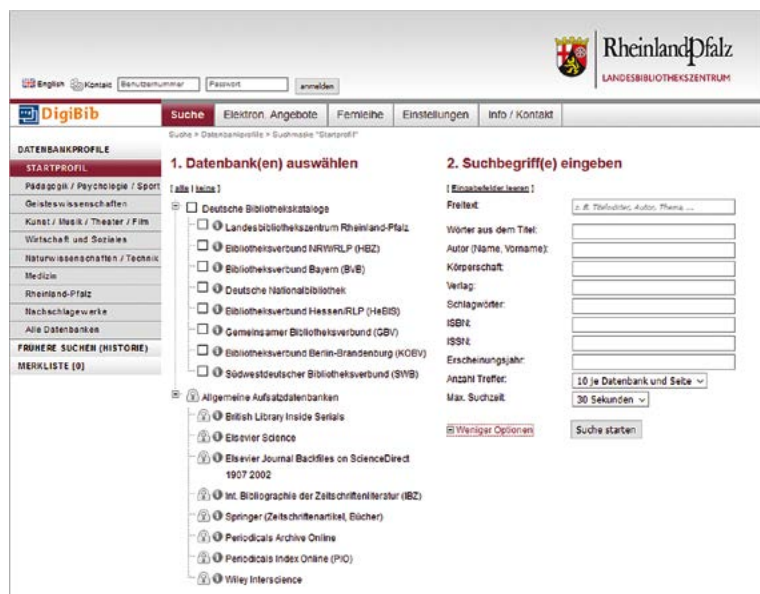
The number of electronic journals and newspapers (e-journals, e-papers), has already topped the 180,000 mark and continues to increase. The freely accessible online catalogue integrates seamlessly with the online interlibrary lending system and the document

delivery services of the individual regional library networks. A web-based cataloguing client has been developed as an easy way for special libraries and academic institutions to enter their holdings. The changeover to the international cataloguing guidelines RDA has been completed.

### The Electronic Periodicals Library

The Electronic Periodicals Library (*Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek* – EZB) was established by the Regensburg University Library in 1997 as the first step into the world of digital journals and was adopted by numerous German libraries, which subsequently adapted it to their local needs. The EZB enables participating libraries to manage their collections of both licensed and freely accessible e-journals through a common database with a standard interface. Each participant can manage its licensed periodicals independently, including the integration of library-specific user information, and is provided with a customized interface indicating the titles for which the library has purchased a licence, using a system of “traffic lights”. Each title is marked by a green, yellow or red dot. Green means that the journal is freely available on the internet; yellow signifies the title is only accessible to registered library users, either in the library itself or via a remote access connection; a red dot indicates an e-journal which has not been licensed by the library and for which the full text content cannot therefore be viewed. A “pay-per-view” service for such journals is available from the publishers, though the table of contents and abstracts can usually be displayed free. The list of available periodicals can be displayed in three ways: alphabetically, by subject field or chronologically by weekly accession period.

In 2017 the EZB database listed around 89,000 titles, including about 55,800 freely accessible academic journals and 18,100 titles available exclusively in online form. Over 615 libraries use the EZB, including over 150 from outside Germany.



The interface of the *Digital Library* (DigiBib at <http://www.digibib.net>) developed by the HBZ in Cologne is indistinguishable from the subscribing library's own services as it can be seamlessly adapted to the host's overall corporate design. The *DigiBib* contents reflect the library's range of catalogues, reference works, and both free and licensed bibliographical and full-text databases. Library users can use the single search field to find not only references to the desired literature but also a choice of full-text options: direct on-screen display, on-site loan status, interlibrary loan request or online order. The screenshot shows the search interface of participant Rheinland-Palatinate Regional Library Centre.



The Duchess Anna Amalia Library in Weimar has its namesake Duchess (who was elected library patroness in 1991) to thank for its particularly magnificent rococo library hall, completed in 1766. In 2004 a fire destroyed the upper stories and 50,000 books. The rococo hall was re-opened in 2007. In 2005 the library inaugurated a modern study centre. The library is an active contributor to various programs for the cataloguing of older materials and publishes the *International Bibliography of German Classical Literature 1750–1850*. – Foto: Klassik Stiftung Weimar

## Bibliographies of Early Imprints

Since a national library was not established in Germany until the 20th century there was also no national bibliography to document works published in Germany since the invention of the printing press. The compilation of a retrospective national bibliography was not even considered, since the gap has been admirably filled by various national cataloguing projects dedicated to the printed literature of individual centuries and based on the records of the holdings of selected libraries.

The first of these is the Union Catalogue of Incunabula (*Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke* – GW), first compiled by the State Library of Berlin in 1904 and intended to record all literature printed in the 15th century including worldwide location details for all known surviving copies, most of which are in Germany. Eleven volumes have been published so far and all the titles listed are also available in the GW database. The total number of recorded incunabula is estimated at 30,500 titles, of which around 240,000 copies alone are known to exist in German libraries.

The Bavarian State Library has housed the German offices of the *Incunabula Short Title Catalogue* (ISTC) since 1988, the main offices of the ISTC being located in London under the

aegis of the British Library. The catalogue database of incunabula held in German library collections and containing digital illustrations of the most important pages can be purchased on CD-ROM updated to 1998. Around 120,000 incunabula have been recorded in the German Incunabula Census, another 44,000 are to follow. The German Incunabula Catalogue INKA allows access to the descriptive records of numerous libraries and in 2016 included details of around 70,000 copies of 16,600 bibliographically discrete titles.

The task of recording the bibliographical details of all printed materials published in the centuries following the incunabula era is dependent on cooperative effort. The “Bibliography of Imprints of the German-Speaking Countries in the 16th Century” (*Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachbereich erschienenen Drucke des 16. Jahrhunderts* – VD 16), a bibliography published by the Bavarian State Library in collaboration with the Duke August Library in Wolfenbüttel, was begun in 1983 and has since been completed. The titles listed in the 22 printed volumes have since been transferred to a database and considerably augmented with additional material. The VD 16 database contains details of around 100,000 titles with 380,000 locations in 260 libraries.

of the printed works listed in the VD 16 and VD 17. Structural information is added before the works are made available on the internet. The total number of works published between 1601 and 1700 is estimated at around 300,000.

The last in the line of retrospective national bibliographical projects is the Bibliography of Imprints of the German-speaking Countries in the 18th Century (*Verzeichnis der im deutschen Sprachraum erschienenen Drucke des 18. Jahrhunderts* – VD 18, commenced in 2009. 21 libraries currently participate in the project, which unlike the VD 16 and VD 17 undertakes to catalogue and digitize the indexed works simultaneously. By the end of 2016 the database contained records of 163,000 monographs and about 4,000 periodicals and is expected to reach around 600,000 titles and 9,100 periodicals on completion of the project.

The Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Germany (*Handbuch der historischen Buchbestände*) is a cooperative venture launched by German libraries with funding from the Volkswagen foundation. The work is edited by the book scholar Bernhard Fabian and published in 27 volumes by the Georg Olms press. It can be regarded as a supplement to the retrospective national bibliography. In contrast to conventional catalogues and bibliographies,

Following VD 16 came the next DFG project, VD 17, structured along similar lines but conceived from the outset as a database, recording all works printed and published in the 17th century in the historical German-language region, regardless of the language of publication. In addition to details of title and holdings, records are enhanced by adding the characteristics of particular editions such as fingerprints, which may help to identify rare works.

Works published in the 16th and 17th centuries have been available as a combined database since 2009, including more than 730,000 individual copies of around 300,000 discrete titles originating from the VD 17. About 55% of these are unique titles held by one of the nine participating libraries. Around 750,000 key pages complete the records, with about 120,000 links to the digitized full-text versions. With funding from the DFG work has been in progress for several years on the digitization





The library of the former Benedictine monastery at Amorbach in Franconia (Bavaria), privately owned by the Princes of Leiningen since secularization in 1803, is a masterpiece of early Classicism, housed in the convent building (1789–1799). Plain white dominates the décor of the room, including the bookcases and finely carved staircases. The collection of 31,000 volumes, to which additions are seldom made today, is indexed in the *Handbuch der historischen Buchbestände*. – Photo: C. Seelbach

the Handbook concentrates not on individual works but on library collections in their entirety. It is conceived as an inventory of works published from the beginnings of the book printing era until the end of the 19th century and includes all literary genres, drawing no distinction between German and foreign publications. It provides a chronological and systematic outline of the historical collections of around 1,500 German libraries of all varieties, its classification by Federal *Länder* reflecting the regional character of the German library system.

The Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Germany represents a new form of working tool for academic and library work and is particularly directed at those research disciplines with a historical bias. Coverage has been extended to neighbouring countries: The Hand-

book of Historical Book Collections in Austria (*Handbuch der historischen Buchbestände in Österreich*), published in four volumes, describes the holdings of more than 250 libraries, while the Handbook of German Historical Book Collections in Europe (*Handbuch deutscher historischer Buchbestände in Europa*) surveys the collections of selected libraries with especially extensive and significant holdings. The Handbook's three sections combine to form a record of older central European cultural history. It was digitized some time ago, the internet edition preserving the book's original structure.

The entries in the "Handbook" usually exclude both works originating before the invention of printing and modern 20th century publications. The cataloguing of manuscripts and by implication the generation of holdings data are both processed locally in conventional manner. Access to more than 90,000 documents pertaining to manuscripts of the Western world is provided by the gateway *Manuscripta mediaevalia*. A re-design is expected to accommodate continuing progress in the overall digitization of surviving mediaeval manuscripts.

## Cooperative User and Information Services

An excellent example of German library cooperation in the field of user services is the interlibrary lending system (*Fernleihe*, sometimes also called the *Überregionaler* or *Deutscher Leihverkehr*). The system's roots go back to the 19th century, and interlibrary loan facilities are today provided as a standard service, though struggling against modern document ordering and delivery systems better able to bridge the gap between rapid retrieval and slow delivery.

### National Interlibrary Lending

No library has ever been able to provide every book, periodical and information source its users may require, and this is no less true today than in the past. It was for this reason that the interlending system was developed at the beginning of the 20th century as a form of reciprocal assistance. Today the national interlibrary loan system is organized on a national basis and is directed exclusively at teaching and research. In addition, it supplies academic literature for training and occupational purposes.

Following the Second World War, regional catalogues were established both as a way of finding out what holdings German libraries

actually had and as a basis for an interlibrary loan system. Some of these central catalogues covered single federal states, others were more broadly based. They were usually attached to large, regional libraries and many have been transferred to the regional union networks. The current German central catalogues are based in the ten interlibrary loan centres in Berlin, Dresden, Frankfurt am Main, Göttingen, Halle, Hamburg, Jena, Cologne, Munich and Stuttgart.

Interlibrary lending was formerly mainly regionally based and here the central catalogues played an indispensable role in title location within their own areas. By the beginning of the 1990s, the seven central regions of the pre-unification Federal Republic had more than 50 million titles on record. Today the sole function of the central catalogues is the location of older holdings for which machine-readable records are not yet available. The network databases, and more recently search engines such as the KVK or the DigiBib, have taken over the coordination of the interlibrary loan system.

The number of annual interlibrary loan requests doubled from one to two million between 1966 and 1978. In 1995 more than three million interlibrary loan requests were processed; by 2009 the total number of active requests had since increased to 4.2 million, since when there has been a slight decline, due to

The Württemberg State Library (*Württembergische Landesbibliothek*) in Stuttgart was home to the central catalogue until the foundation of the Baden-Württemberg Library Service Centre (*Bibliotheksservicezentrum Baden-Württemberg*). Founded in 1765, the Library holds outstanding collections of special and older material, including a famous Bible collection, and maintains its own research centre, the Hölderlin Archive, which publishes the *Internationale Hölderlin-Bibliographie*. Integrated into the Library is the Library of Contemporary History (*Bibliothek für Zeitgeschichte*), a special library focusing on contemporary and war history since the First World War. An extension to the Library is currently under construction, with completion set for the end of 2018; at the same time the present building is being completely modernised and refurbished. – Photo: WLB Stuttgart







The University Library and Technical Information Library in Hanover (*Technische Informationsbibliothek* – TIB) in Lower Saxony have undergone continual growth in the past decades. The new building erected in 1965 was extended in 1986 and again in 1991; in 2002 a second location was added. The present five locations provide a total of 1,700 seats for the library users. The TIB is funded jointly by the Federal Government and the regional states, but also raises an increasingly large amount of money through its own document delivery service. – Photo: MJ Smets, Schulz-Speyer AG

the intensive use of electronic direct delivery services and the increasing proportion of text and source downloads from the internet, some of which are available without charge on open

access. In 2015 2.27 million active interlibrary loan requests were fulfilled, with 1.64 million passive orders received. The number of participating libraries has been on the increase for several years, with 1,582 libraries registered in 2017. Their names and location codes (IDs) are listed in a national location code index (*Sigel-Verzeichnis*), coordinated and published by the central office in the State Library in Berlin. These codes are now valid internationally and are allocated by German ISIL agency. Today ISIL codes are used as unique identifiers for libraries, archives, museums and other related

institutions, and have been incorporated into regional library network catalogues, the interlibrary loans system and other applications.

The traditional interlibrary loans order system using ILL request forms has long since been replaced by online ordering incorporating availability checks for monographs and the electronic delivery of articles, speeding up the interlending process considerably. However, at the start of 2008 the second law on the regulation of copyright law in the information society came into force, bringing with it an amendment to the article on the ordering and delivery of copies. This statute made the electronic delivery of requested documents directly to the user illegal; articles scanned within the interlibrary lending system may only be exchanged between one library and another, so that the user still only receives a paper copy.

Interlibrary lending does not operate solely at national level; as a rule, community library systems themselves organise internal interlibrary loan systems between the central library and the individual branch and mobile libraries.

Some federal states have developed a regional interlending structure connecting to the national system. The Association of Public Libraries in Berlin (*Verbund der Öffentlichen Bibliotheken Berlins* – VÖBB) was founded in 1995, its members including nearly all public and some school libraries. The local and interlibrary lending network enables users to use a single library card to obtain media not held locally and incorporates digital ordering via Onleihe.

Finally, there is the international interlending system in which German libraries also participate, with the State Library in Berlin acting as the German international ILL clearinghouse.



### Electronic Document Delivery Services

The traditional interlibrary lending system has been increasingly challenged over the past few years by a new form of “interlending”, the main objective of which is to shorten delivery times. Using modern information and communications technology, document delivery enables the library to deal directly with the user instead of having to pass his or her request on to another library. This assumes that the user has access to the appropriate literature databases, but since nearly all libraries and library networks make their databases available on the internet as online catalogues, this is usually the case. The past ten years have seen the establishment of a number of commercial document delivery services using electronic order and payment methods. The National Subject libraries in Hanover, Kiel and Cologne were especially active in developing efficient systems of supplying article copies—and to a limited extent books—directly to the user, even outside Germany. The headquarters of the regional library networks implemented similar national supply systems, a good example being the online ordering system *GBVdirekt* set up by the Common Library Network (*Gemeinsamer Bibliotheksverbund* – GBV) and processing several hundred thousand requests each year. It was discontinued in 2007, as have been most of the other direct delivery systems.

The most important national document delivery service is *subito*, introduced in 1994 as the joint “Federal-State Initiative for the Acceleration and Improvement of Literature and Information Delivery Services” (*Beschleunigung der Literatur- und Informationsdienste*). It has since become firmly established as a customer-centred service enterprise. All the members and suppliers of *subito*, registered in 2003 as a non-profit association, are efficient general and special libraries, currently numbering 35 institutions including the special *China Direct* service set up for three Chinese libraries.



The headquarters and full-time office are based in Berlin.

The document delivery service offers online search and ordering facilities, using the internet to supply subject literature directly to the user's desk. Functions include not only the sending of article copies but also of books, collections, dissertations and other returnable literature. Orders are processed electronically and article copies can be delivered online, by fax or by post. Delivery is either within three working days (normal service) or within twenty-four hours (express service), excluding Saturdays and public holidays in both cases. The participating supplier libraries have been able to accelerate their routines to enable processing of subito orders within an average of 11 hours.

The subito service used by a customer depends on whether he or she is located in a German-speaking country or elsewhere. The German-speaking countries include Germany, Austria, Liechtenstein and Switzerland; all others are classed as international territory. A distinction is made between individuals and libraries as customers.

Prices are calculated according to the form (non-returnable copy or returnable loan), speed of delivery, method of delivery, the customer's location, the licensing agreements with the publisher or the society for reproduction rights *Wort*, and the user's customer category, the latter distinguishing between non-commercial users (school pupils, students, university staff and publicly-funded research institutions), commercial users, and private individuals. There is a special tariff for the use of the *subito Library Service*, aimed exclusively at libraries in Germany and abroad (except in the USA and Great Britain) and not available to commercial customers. The service enables libraries to offer their users express 72-hour delivery of journal articles

A number of years ago German and international publishers took legal steps against *subito* aimed at forcing it to suspend its document delivery and interlibrary loans service to libraries in Germany and abroad. The legal wrangle ended in 2008 with a settlement. The ending of the dispute heralded a new form of cooperation between publishers and *subito*. At international level the issue was regulated

by licensing agreements. On January 1st 2008 the second law on the regulation of copyright law in the information society came into force, bringing with it an amendment to the article on the ordering and delivery of copies. Electronic document delivery within Germany is now regulated by licensing contracts or compensation agreements with the society for reproduction rights *Wort*. The licensing fee or royalties are charged to the *subito* customer. Users receive information both about the additional regulations covering copies from licence-protected publications and copies requiring payment through *VG Wort*, and about copyright obligations. In 2016 relations between publishers, *VG Wort* and *subito* improved further when the distinction between printed and electronic publications was dropped.

Despite these limitations, *subito* continued to increase its order volume, reaching annual figures of up to 1.3 million. Numbers have continually declined since 2008 and now total around 325,000 requests each year. The reasons for this decline, which to a lesser extent also applies to the traditional interlibrary loan system, can be found in copyright restrictions, high licence and royalty fees and the rapid increase in the number of electronic journals provided on the basis of national or campus licences and thus offering direct access to the required information. *Subito* continues to make a significant contribution to the efficient provision of literature to science and research.

### Cooperative Information Services

Digital information services are a fast-growing increment to traditional library and information centre facilities, whether in the form of a synchronous Info-Chat or through asynchronous channels such as e-mail or web forms. Information services are particularly effective when integrated into a network of libraries and information centres, as is the case with the German Internet Library or *DigiAuskunft*.

The German Internet Library (*Deutsche Internetbibliothek* – DIB), a cooperative project launched at national level by a library Working Group headed by the Bremen City Library, the Bertelsmann Foundation and the dbv, was



coordinated and hosted by the Library Service Centre Baden-Württemberg (*Bibliotheksservice-Zentrum Baden-Württemberg*) from 2008 to 2013. More than 50 public and academic libraries in Germany, Austria and Switzerland were members of the cooperative network, which provided library internet users with a free e-mail account and an annotated link list of German language websites arranged by subject and including more than 6,500 web addresses. The DIB service was discontinued at the end of 2013 due to falling user numbers.

Similar virtual cooperative inquiry networks focusing on academic subjects have been set up by the University Library Service Centre (HBZ) in Cologne with *DigiAuskunft* and the Library Service Centre Baden-Württemberg (BSZ) in Constance with *InfoDesk*. *Question Point* is a worldwide information service funded by the OCLC. The ZLB in Berlin offers this multilingual service in 26 languages. It can also be used over the mobile telephone network thanks to the integration of QR code.

Qualified enquiry and information services are a high priority at the new Koblenz City Library. Within two years of its inauguration in June 2013 the Main Library in Koblenz (Rhine-land-Palatinate), located in the *Forum Confluentes* right next door to both the interactive Rhine exhibitions of the Middle Rhine Museum in the 'Romanticum' and a modern shopping mall, registered 750,000 visitors and the one-millionth loan (architect: Bentheim Crouwel). 150,000 media await the library's users, housed in an area extending over three floors and including a children's and young people's department, and a well-stocked music library/media centre. Reading rooms, study corners and event areas complete the picture. – Photo: Juraschek Lifestyle, Koblenz

## 6 BETWEEN THE PRESENT AND THE FUTURE—THE LIBRARY IN THE DIGITAL ERA

The idea of “The Future of the Library, the Library of the Future” has been the subject of passionate and controversial debate at library conferences, in festschrifts, textbooks, and in library journals. A range of statements published between 2013 and 2016 throws light on the hopes, fears and expectations of librarians for the role and function of the public and academic libraries of the future.

### Parameters and strategic issues

What does the future hold for the library? Will libraries as we know them still exist in ten or twenty years’ time? Has the digital revolution already sounded their death-knell, will they be ousted or even replaced by automated databases and search engines? Even if they do still continue to exist despite all prophecies of doom: What will they look like? Will they be just a concept, a virtual space—or will they still have a physical location with four walls and a roof?

It is no coincidence that the librarianship associations BIB and VDB chose the slogan “Libraries for the Future—a Future for Libraries” for their 100th jubilee Library Congress in June 2011. The slogan reflected both the Congress programme and the host libraries’ demands. Education, information and knowl-

edge are seen as the raw materials shaping the future. Issues such as information literacy, lifelong learning, global knowledge transfer, top-level research and the information overload flanked by the promotion of reading and social integration through education, were then, and are still six years later, the chief challenges facing social and educational policy-makers. The official opening greeting in 2011 called upon all German librarians to make their own contribution to the idea of free access to education and knowledge for all social strata. Libraries should become actively involved in the future of the education and knowledge-based societies—indeed this ought to be their main goal. But they also need a secure future to enable them to pass on information, collect the knowledge of our time, preserve our cultural heritage and continue to develop new information and education services.

Much of the old confidence in the mission and self-conception of the library has dissipated in the past few years, not only, but perhaps especially, here in Germany. Under the influence of the internet, smart phones and digital media, the reading of printed books can no longer be taken for granted. Prophets of doom foretell the demise of the book at increasingly short intervals. Everything is in flux. The library users of the advancing 21st century have changed too: they are usually better educated, better off, more mobile and more responsible than they were 20 years ago, even though the number of functional illiterates has remained almost unchanged at around six million. Modern library customers decide for themselves how they wish to spend their leisure time,

The Regional Library of Mecklenburg-West Pomerania (*Landesbibliothek Mecklenburg-Vorpommern*) in Schwerin is an admirable example of the felicitous union of a converted historical and a brand-new contemporary building. The Library was founded in 1779 and for 118 years was located in the immediate vicinity of the cathedral under extremely cramped conditions. In 2004 it found a new home. The prestigious historical building in the Mecklenburg Renaissance style, formerly officers’ quarters and now housing the library’s administrative offices, is linked by a glazed bridge to the modern extension containing the open-access collections and stacks. – Photo: A. Botefür



The City Library in Kreuztal – a small town of around 31,000 inhabitants in north Siegerland (North Rhine-Westphalia) – is an example of how modern, discreetly sleek fittings can create a pleasant and stimulating atmosphere in which library users immediately feel at home. In addition to the traditional circulation service the Library also offers *Onleihe*, and for children and young people there is a gaming-room equipped with a range of console games for use on-site or at home. – Photo: J. Feist, ekz

for leisure is in short supply. Libraries must compete with other organizations in the leisure marketplace. At the same time, changes are taking place in public administration, leading to a gradual privatization of individual services, their conversion to online resources and their subjection to the stringent principles of cost-performance-analysis.

The massive social, economic and technological changes of the last few decades have given rise to a number of questions: Will the new technologies mean that libraries will in future operate in a virtual space or that they will be replaced by cloud-based libraries? Will the archives, museums and libraries of the world melt down to form a gigantic network of human memory? In the face of these radical upheavals,

the individual components of the contemporary system of general and academic communication consisting of publishers, libraries, database producers, authors and readers will face the same challenges as the printed media books and journals—they will all have to be re-defined. Even though today, in the year 2017, libraries can still be regarded as the main general providers of information to the sciences and education, certain developments already indicate that in five or ten years they may well be only one of several such providers in the information market. But what will the consequences be?

Looking at the next five to eight years, it would seem that the following five hypotheses, first proposed in 2011, still stand in 2017:

- Hypothesis 1: *Education* will be the decisive factor determining the future course of society, and more especially of the economy, in the latter half of the 21st century.
- Hypothesis 2: The mere *retrieval of information* will continue to be less of a problem in the coming decades than the retrieval of the *required information*; the focus will be on quality rather than quantity.







The Media Centre at Neckarsulm (Baden-Württemberg) provides its users with an up-to-date selection of books, periodicals, audio files, films, digital media and internet resources and perceives itself as a meeting place for young and old alike. The idea of the new building, opened in 2004, is to make knowledge as transparent as its own striking construction, the facade of which makes use of a wide range of different materials. The intention of the architects Bechler and Krummlauf was to introduce a new concept into conventional library architecture, designed to explore the role of electronic media and the future of the book and to reflect these in its structure, consisting of two buildings linked by a glazed walkway separating quiet and busy zones from each other. – Photo: D. Strauss

- Hypothesis 3: The concept of the *library as meeting place* allowing real contact between real people must be completely re-thought; the idea of the lonely desk and PC monitor as a window on the “global village” internet world is no longer good enough,
- Hypothesis 4: Tomorrow’s library must be *identifiable with a real physical space* and form an integral part of the cultural and social life of the community. The idea of the library as a “third place” is now well established within library discourse. Without a library building, towns will have no soul and their citizens will lose all sense of orientation within the maze of networked machines.
- Hypothesis 5: The *proportion of printed to digital media* will level off at 50:50 over the next 10 years. The non-book sector will experience only a nominal growth rate.

The increase in the variety of available media types will unquestionably influence library development in both a positive and a negative sense. The high investment costs involved in the purchase of new electronic storage media and data reading devices act as a deterrent to many funding agencies, especially when the future availability and market presence of these products cannot yet be foreseen with any accuracy. Electronic books (e-books),

hailed in 2000 as the lucrative market of the future, shortly afterwards to be decried as medial marginalia, have experienced an unexpected renaissance since 2010, though their predicted market success has waned somewhat in the last seven years in favour of a more moderate prognosis. The hype around e-books of the last five years has settled down, the anticipated rise in market share has evened out at a modest 5–7% of the total printed books turnover. It remains to be seen if further growth comparable to the USA can be expected. This is a good example of the extreme difficulties involved in assessing the potential of innovative technology, whether in the form of electronic storage media or new online distribution channels.

The active environment encompassing publishers, book and media producers and including both their traditional and digital media products will undoubtedly play a decisive role in the shaping the future of the library. The market for electronic journals is of elementary importance to academic libraries. For some time now, a large proportion of scholarly journals have been published in electronic form only, even though customers often still prefer the printed form. The pricing spiral instigated by a number of publishing houses has aggravated the ousting of the printed journal.

Many experts and authors consider the fundamental significance of the library either to have been misjudged or to have been politically ignored. The main reasons for this are insufficient political awareness of the library’s functions coupled with a lack of confidence in the innovative capabilities of this centuries-old institution; it seems no-one is willing to impute to the library the ability to adapt to the challenges of the information society. This has led to a period of stagnation in library funding, which has escalated over the last five years into the full-scale under-funding of some libraries. It appears that German librarians and the library lobby have failed to convince decision-makers of the library’s ability to function as central information and education agency just as well in this country as it is known to do in the Anglo-Saxon and Scandinavian countries.

The future of the library is characterized by the key concept “Local Access, Global Infor-

mation”. It should be the political intention to enable libraries in all sectors to promote media digitization, media distribution, the provision of enquiry services and the structuring of knowledge, to develop models for so doing and to pave the way to the future. At the same time, libraries must also function as contact points for all kinds of cultural output, events and enquiries. Without doubt, however, it will be necessary to assign economic considerations a higher priority than in the past.

The Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm Centre (architect Max Dudler) was opened in 2009 as the new Main Library of the Humboldt University in Berlin. It houses the holdings of 12 humanities and social sciences branch and sectional libraries. 1.5 million of the 2.5 million media units are arranged by subject on open access. The 1,250 workspaces for the users including 500 computer and 44 multimedia workstations together with the ten group study room and 55 individual desks are scarcely enough to cope with the demand for space within the library which has developed into a popular place to study. – Photo: M. Bulaty





## Concepts and models for the public library of the future

What, then, are the main concerns of the public library sector when it comes to trends and future issues, what are the visions and fears for the future, what developments need a creative reaction? Some progressive young library managers and innovators are calling for the time-honoured epithet “Library” to be dropped in favour of “House of Knowledge”. They are eager to take an active part in redressing the deficits they perceive in library services and performance: by teaching more and better “digital literacy skills”, by helping to spread more “emotional intelligence” (empathy), by establishing libraries as “public spaces” and by adding “career advisory services” to their portfolio. Under the slogan “Innovation Needs Courage” our creative young colleagues are striving to move away from the image of the librarian as collector and conservator to embrace the innovative idea of the transformation of libraries and media centres into places of cultural and social interaction with new, fresh ideas and citizen-centric value-added services exemplifying participatory library work.

### *Libraries as “Third Places”*

As already mentioned, the keyword “Third Space” or “Third Place”—a sociological term—has entered librarianship in the last few years. It describes strategic decisions made by libraries to project themselves as communication centres and social spaces. Public libraries are in high demand as so-called “third places” and as such are making an architectural mark on the city and municipal landscape; like museums they have become coveted contracts for prominent architects. These days, libraries want to show themselves and be seen in return; they have become social places. Modern library buildings, sometimes of controversial design, often dominate the city skyline. And this at least leads to interaction with local citizens. Following the example of the great libraries in Scandinavia, Great Britain, the Netherlands or the USA, some libraries in the larger cities have begun to consider whether other service providers might not also be housed in the

same building, or at any rate in the immediate vicinity, for example tourist information offices, adult education centres, museums, restaurants, cafeterias, bookshops, banks or exhibition and conference centres.

The concept of “third places” emerged with the rise of huge shopping centres and malls in the inner cities and on the city outskirts in the 1970s and signifies constructed living spaces between the home (as the first place) and the workplace or training centre (as second place), in which families, young people or the elderly can meet to shop, pursue leisure activities, eat and drink, or just spend time. After losing their status as exclusive information providers to the internet, libraries began to transform themselves into Third Places as they realised that the importance of their media services was waning in the face of other sources and download services, and that creative ideas were at a premium.

Experts have warned that if libraries wish to survive into the 21st century they will have to present themselves in a new light. Libraries are faced with the challenge of providing high-quality space and an enhanced range of learning and education services. They are concentrating their efforts on developing learning environments and information centres offering space for individuals or groups to work—learning and studying is often teamwork. As users often have very different needs there is a need for spaces with an atmosphere conducive to both concentration and stimulation, including both pleasant spaciousness and concentrated seclusion. Libraries offer a wide range of comfortable working environments, including armchairs and sofas

How then might the library of tomorrow—with the emphasis here on the public library—really look, without resorting to visions of an all too exaggerated nature? The former library service centre librarian Klaus Dahm has developed a series of four models well worth considering, which combine the present and the future in a particularly vivid way.

### *The “Feel-good” Library*

As documented by the discrepancy between the number of active “borrowers” and the far larger number of detected “visitors” (with no

The newly equipped children’s department at the City Library in Saarbrücken (Saarland), which in 2014 celebrated 90 years in its present building in the *Rathaus-Carrée* (town-hall block), is a “feel-good” library for children. The centrepiece is a wooden sculpture representing a “reading tree” arching over a landscape of book bins full of (picture) books for 2–8-year-olds. In addition to the Library’s special events for nursery school groups, teachers will find here a wide range of training media with suggestions for sport, play and handiwork ideas or music and dancing activities. – Photo: form.bar by okinlab



borrowing activity), there obviously exists a considerable demand for a social communication space open to the public. Even today it is hard to imagine the modern library without its cafeteria. In Anglo-Saxon libraries, pleasantly-furnished rooms known as “Living Rooms” have become an established feature, inviting visitors to drop in for a chat, to surf the internet, enjoy a cup of coffee or read a book in relaxing surroundings. In the planning and conception of future libraries it will more important than ever before to pay more attention to furniture and fittings suited to the user experience and to designing flexible and “function-free” spaces. Evening and weekend opening will be a matter of course. Tomorrow’s library is a source of collective inspiration, somewhere with a positive atmosphere and an appealing, informal style where people want to spend time and where they can explore the world of information retrieval, book and modern media.

### *The Network Library*

Modern libraries have long proved their worth in the business of barrier-free provision of information and knowledge services to all ages and social strata. As no library can possibly stock every item its users might need, the public library of the future will need to be part of an even more tightly-knit library network

offering access to the total pool of literature and media, which by that time will be even larger. A cataloguing network in the form of a common media database will be particularly effective if customers are able to access it from their homes, schools or workplaces. It will be essential to work in a more systematic way towards the integration of public and academic library resources within the network than has hitherto been the case, ensuring the creation of an allowing the customer to use every library within the network with a single library pass and enabling any media unit to be ordered via the internet and sent to the customer’s local library for collection, or directly to his or her home for an extra charge.

### *The Combination Library*

In no small number of locations, libraries funded by a variety of different bodies exist alongside or even in direct competition with one another, without any form of official cooperation. In difficult economic times, possible synergy benefits will be an important consideration in investment evaluation. One promising option would be to merge several smaller libraries to form one large physical and administrative unit. Where several cultural and educational institutions exist in a single town, it would be worth considering amalgamating them at a single site. This could mean combining the local





The new Media Centre in Krefeld (North Rhine-Palatine) was opened in 2008 after a two-year construction period, giving the local inhabitants access to 195,000 print and digital media. A cooperative agreement signed with the Niederrhein University of Applied Sciences in 2015 enables students to use Krefeld Media Centre's media and services free of charge. – Photo: M. Kramer, Krefeld

museum, school library, resource centre, local archive, adult education centre, art gallery and library to form one united “Information and Media Centre”, assuming appropriate accommodation is available.

### **The City Library Agency**

If physical fusion is for some reason not a viable option, there are other ways of combining the various types of administrative and functional library structures to achieve a networked library system. By this are meant the many school libraries which often exist as separate islands, isolated from one another. The city library of the future could here play an integrative and cooperative role as library agency (*Bibliotheksagentur*). This would involve establishing a “School Libraries Office” (*Schulbibliothekarische Arbeitsstelle*) at a central location, responsible for all the schools in the area. Its objective would be to train and advise the library staff, handle book and media acquisi-

tions for all the local partners, undertake the cataloguing and processing of the collections, coordinate staff timetables and compile performance indicators.

### **Proposals for a Library of the Future**

What advantages can libraries use as selling points both today and probably still in ten years’ time? Barbara Lison put forward the following three propositions in 2013:

*Proposition 1:* Libraries should continue to guarantee non-commercial and data protection-compliant access to information, knowledge, education and culture.”

With their not-for-profit digital services libraries offer an alternative to the profit-oriented business enterprises operating on the internet. As public institutions they are committed to respecting state data protection laws, which means that they treat all personal data

with the necessary care and never store or pass on this kind of information.

*Proposition 2:* Libraries must place technical, social and cultural changes high on their agenda and leverage them for their own development.”

Technical advances since 2000 have had a drastic influence on what libraries do, how they are seen and what goals they set for themselves. The fact that the level of demand by customers and users for physical media is undiminished ensures that libraries do not blindly submit to the permanent hype around digital technology. With this in mind it is essential for libraries to attune themselves to the imminent paradigm change in media and information services.

Public libraries in Germany are not only having to deal with the consequences of global megatrends such as new technologies and data protection, online learning services and new online business models, they are also forced to face concrete social and political challenges if they wish to retain their credibility and justify taxpayer funding. The most important keywords in this context are migration, inclusion, demographic change, social rift, the rise of new lifestyles, the convergence of learning and entertainment, new ways of obtaining information and knowledge, and debt cap. In her answer Barbara Lison points to the strengthening of the position of the inner-city library as learning space and local citizens’ service centre along the lines of the current Danish model. Another important aspect of public library work will continue to be low-threshold, non-commercial access to sources of reliable information and high-quality cultural materials.

*Proposition 3:* The political decision-makers must reinforce the essential role of the library in the digital society.”

In the election year 2013 the German Library Association dbv put forward election performance indicators in the form of seven key factors considered essential to the future sustainability of libraries. It is expected that similar indicators will be issued before the 2017 federal elections. The original indicators

included funding and the legal status of libraries, copyright in the knowledge society, digitization and conservation, cultural education, the teaching of media literacy, Sunday opening, public libraries, and unhindered access to e-books. The dbv will be intensifying its lobby work in a bid to realise these political demands.

In 2014 the librarian and philologist Wolfgang Kaiser voiced his insights in a blog post on “LIBREAS. Library Ideas”: He drew attention to the new Rotterdam Library which had informed its users and guests in 2009 that the number of loans might be decreasing but that this was not a problem, since circulation levels and holdings were now only of secondary importance—a state of affairs unlikely to change any time soon. The new paradigm according to Kaiser was now the Post-Growth Library, focusing on sustainable development and the

It is possible that in the future more importance will be attached to the aesthetics of library architecture and the appeal of the library atmosphere to the senses as a centre for relaxation and communication beyond its function as a mere storehouse of knowledge. The Public Library of the local community of Neufahrn (Bavaria), constructed in the form of a ship with a glass “prow” and incorporating varying window shapes and a staircase bathed in natural light, may well be indicative of the direction modern library architecture is taking. – Photo: J. Feist



social and economic factors associated with it. Public libraries' insistence on social sustainability could strengthen the cohesion between citizens and society in certain districts and communities. The real indicator of the success of a so-called Educational Republic of Germany would not be its digitization budget but the work its public libraries were doing to achieve genuine and sustainable equal opportunities.

In 2013 the library service supplier ekz launched its internal strategy programme "Libraries are changing 2020" (*Bibliotheken bewegen 2020*), also focusing on the role libraries should be playing in the future. In 2014 the ekz's Library Council published its "Recommendations on 12 new role models" (*Vorschläge zu 12 neuen Rollenmodellen*), with ideas ranging from "Knowledge Centre", "Reading Promotion Centre", Digital Literacy Instruction Centre" through to "Community Meeting Place"—no great surprises or radically different catchwords, just the tried and tested images most librarians accept today and probably still will in ten years from now. Customers were able to use the annual online survey to rank the suggested roles in order of importance.

Following the publication of the Allensbach Institute of Demography's strategy programme in 2015 the ekz commissioned the Institute to carry out a study into how people used libraries and what they expected from them. The results were presented at the ekz conference "Chances 2016: Libraries master change" (*Chancen 2016: Bibliotheken meistern den Wandel*) and published simultaneously as "The Future of Libraries in Germany" (*Die Zukunft der Bibliotheken in Deutschland*).

The representative survey, which was carried out in November 2015 based on a sample of 1,448 face-to-face interviews with persons aged between 16 and 75, gives an insight into reading habits, library use and what people expect of libraries. Currently 29% of the population belong to the category of regular public library users. In addition the survey also mirrors the expectations of Germans regarding the role they wish libraries to play in society. One results shows that 58% of the respondents said that they thought it was important that libraries should exist in the future, while 32% thought it was 'extremely' important.

One of the central questions was: 'Public libraries offer many different services. On these cards we have noted a range of possibilities. Which of these services do you think the public library should offer? What should the public library be like in order for you to want to use it?'

A comparison of the ekz customer survey and the representative opinion poll reveals that in both cases respondents have similar ideas on the library of the future. The Allensbach study establishes that "libraries see themselves ideally as both a "house of books and media of all kinds" and as a "centre for knowledge, information and guidance". The population at large regards both these aspects as immensely important. Respondents consider comprehensive media holdings and expert guidance to be among the core functions of a public library: 76% of the population expect their ideal library to offer comprehensive holdings of books, e-books, journals, music and films, 70% want reliable guidance from qualified staff. Nearly as many (71%) also want the library to have a pleasant atmosphere. Here again, this is consistent with the views of the libraries themselves, who see the role of the library as a "space for social encounter and spending time" to be one of its four main future functions. Figure 10 illustrates the range of ideas and expectations while at the same time revealing the discrepancy between the way users imagine the library of the future and their current experience.

## Vision and reality in academic libraries

A glance at the present and future development of librarianship reveals the constantly-changing role of libraries in the information society, in which information has become a basic resource and the information media are themselves subject to an accelerated rate of change. The need for information has increased in all social areas but at the same time so has the amount of information in circulation, so that it can be described as a glut. Libraries contribute to the satisfaction of this need in the form of traditional and electronic media provision, whereby the character, function and self-conception of the library are in flux. In principle this is valid for all types of library but changes in information needs can best be seen in the academic, research and teaching library context, so that it follows that academic libraries will be more directly affected by these changes than public libraries.

First of all, it is necessary to point out that all those visionaries who prophesied that the end of the book era was nigh, and that electronic and digital media would march forth as sole victors, were wrong. The book, or rather printed material in general, has held its own because it has several advantages that the new media undoubtedly do not possess—it needs no electrical energy or technical equipment, it can be used anywhere, it has a demonstrably long life, it makes reading long texts easier, it cannot be tampered with and so guarantees the authenticity of the contents etc., quite apart from aesthetic, bibliophile and other book-related aspects. The world of scholarship is well aware of these and other related factors such as quality control, scholarly reputation, proof of academic qualification etc. It is to be expected that the form of a particular medium best suited to a particular group of users will enjoy a long life.

Leading bodies such as the German Council of Science and Humanities (*Wissenschaftsrat*) are convinced that printed media will retain their relevance for information provision in research and teaching, although the importance of digital publications will increase. A logical result of this double function was emergence



The new building of the University and Regional Library of Thuringia in Jena (*Thüringer Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek*) in Jena (architects: Heckmann, Kristel, Jung), opened in 2001, possibly answers the question of whether libraries in the digital network era need buildings at all. The single-tier library system in Jena, with holdings of over four million volumes, consists of the Main Library, three larger subject libraries and a large number of sectional and branch libraries scattered throughout the city. It is planned to reduce their number in stages. – Photo: P. Scheere, FSU Jena

of a new type of academic library combining a mixture of printed and digital publications with information sources—the *hybrid library*. Since it is hardly to be expected that library budgets will increase, it will be necessary to maintain a fine balance between both media forms and to adjust this continuously according to supply and demand. Academic libraries have long since begun to shift the focus of their work from holdings management to enhanced location and procurement services (access contra holding). Nevertheless—and indeed as a result—the size of the acquisitions budget remains a cause for concern.

However there are signs of a developing split regarding information needs and their satisfaction. Whereas in the natural and engineering sciences, medicine and computer science print media can no longer be regarded as the primary source of information, so that libraries can even expect to lose their leading role as information provider, in all other disciplines the library will remain the archive for printed holdings, although even in the "book-centred" subject areas classic collection-building will suffer somewhat as a result of the economic situation



and the advance of digitization. University libraries in particular face the difficult task of having to serve two very different knowledge cultures.

Although library statistics indicate that printed media are still being acquired in large quantities, the proportion of digital media—be these e-journals, e-books, retro-catalogued library holdings, databases or other electronic resources—is increasing. In view of the online accessibility of knowledge it should come as no surprise that the issue figures in libraries are falling significantly. There is a contrasting tendency for libraries to become study spaces. State, regional and university libraries have all registered an increase in the number of users thronging into their reading rooms and open access collections. As a result work desks are in many cases in short supply, leading to short-term regulatory measures and necessitating long-term increases in capacity. Yet the establishment of learning centres or learning environments, which have led to first concrete examples in the neighbouring European Union countries, is still in its infancy in Germany. Both academic and public libraries see themselves as learning centres and include learning arrangements and knowledge management in their concepts.

In spite of increasing “virtualisation” the library still remains a physical space. Building planning and space requirements will therefore still be among the most pressing issues libraries will be facing over the next few years. Although a number of new libraries have been built, extended or renovated following German reunification, the building of stack extensions and creation of more workspaces is still a top priority for many others. The renaissance of the reading room may be seen as a reflex reaction to the pressures of increasing on-site use.

As educational institutions, libraries are in the long run also places where key skills are taught, namely literacy in reading, writing, media and information. Whereas the efforts of public libraries are mainly directed at helping children and young people to acquire elementary reading skills and basic competence in dealing with printed materials, the varied choice of courses offered by academic libraries focuses on tutoring students, older school pu-

pils and other groups in advanced information literacy. Activities such as the teaching of information and digital literacy, the organisation of library-based instruction, the integration of library training elements into the curricula of the bachelor and master's degree courses and other measures leading to the development of *teaching libraries* can all be used in a library marketing sense to raise awareness of the library within the university and reinforce its role.

As surveys conducted at a number of universities have shown, university libraries are expected to index the relevant scholarly internet sources and provide access to them via easy-to-use search engines. Libraries should function as “navigators on the ocean of knowledge”, providing their users with the appropriate weapons to stem the tide of information threatening to swamp them. Libraries will also be expected to increase their range of electronic media and services without neglecting the upkeep of their book and journal collections, since books continue to be regarded as the primary medium in many subject areas. The development of the Digital Library implies not only access to electronic journals and full-text works, and to databases and other internet sources, but also active information management. This includes the creation of portal solutions, resource discovery systems and search engines to bundle the wide range of digital and conventional information resources. If libraries can form links between the digital and printed worlds in this way, they will become Hybrid Libraries in the true sense of the word and will be able to use this to partially justify their existence.

Students are expressly demanding the active teaching of information and media literacy and need help with the new academic study methods (online tutorials, electronic reading lists etc.) and forms of scholarly publishing (electronic publishing, multi-media presentations etc.) To meet these demands, libraries will need the appropriate technical and organizational infrastructure and librarians the appropriate skills and abilities, which they will acquire both at the time of their initial training and later.

However, academic libraries are not solely educational institutions; they also have a

cultural mandate, requiring them to archive, index and preserve the cultural heritage and the knowledge of earlier generations recorded in paper form in order that present and future generations may have access to sources in both the original and in secondary digital form.

### Cultural Heritage

In view of the rapid changes within the media and society, the conservation of both the physical and non-physical cultural heritage has become a top international priority. Germany's cultural assets are part of the collective human memory, and as such of global significance and universal value. It is the responsibility of society as a whole to ensure they are preserved and handed down to coming generations. The term cultural heritage includes both moveable and immovable objects of archaeological, historical, architectural, artistic, literary, technical, scholarly or other value, especially the holdings of archives, libraries, museums and other heritage and memory institutions.

Cultural and heritage protection are governed by international agreements and national legislation. Examples are the Hague Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict signed in 1954 and the European Union's attempts since 2008 to create a European Cultural Heritage label. The UNESCO Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, signed in 1972 and in force since 1975, is another leading example; the designation World Heritage originates from this Convention, as does the register of World Heritage Sites begun in 1978 and currently listing over one thousand cultural and natural heritage sites in more than 160 countries all over the world.

In 1992 UNESCO added a third category to its World Heritage plan: the Memory of the World Programme. The goal of the programme is to secure access to documents of cultural and historical significance and to protect them from destruction or neglect. The Memory of the World Register includes priceless manuscripts, musical scores, literary estates, maps and prints alongside audio, image and film documents. The first German heritage work



Libraries with holdings of special historical significance strive to make their cultural treasures known to a broader public by organising regular exhibitions, often accompanied by scholarly documentation. However it is only advisable to exhibit priceless objects in specially equipped rooms under secure museum conditions. When its new building was inaugurated in 2002 the Saxon State and University Library in Dresden (Saxony) decided to continue the time-honoured tradition of separating special and permanent exhibitions: The Book Museum houses the Rare Books Room as a “house within a house”, enabling numerous treasures such as a Maya manuscript dating from the 13th century or the original copy of the *Sachsenspiegel* to be viewed, even if – for protective reasons – for a maximum of six weeks a year.  
– Photo: H. Ahlers, SLUB

was entered in the Register in 1999; currently over 20 objects from German libraries and other heritage institutions bear the seal Memory of the World.

At national level, the Act on the Protection of Cultural Property in Germany, passed in 1955 and amended in 2016, is above all intended to prevent German items of cultural value from leaving the country. As a consequence, works of art and other culturally relevant objects, including library holdings, are listed at regional and federal level as items of national cultural value. This law also governs the import and export of cultural objects and the return of unlawfully imported or exported items, making provenance research obligatory in order to establish the origin of an object beyond any reasonable doubt.



Tourists visiting Trier (Rhineland-Palatinate) on the Mosel have long been drawn to the City Library with a Rare Book Room of its own open even on Sundays. Bibliographic treasures of inestimable worth can be viewed in the museum, which is equipped with the very latest media technology. The Library owns 2,800 manuscripts, 3,000 incunabula and 100,000 early printed works. Among the cimelia on display are the Codex Egberti (part of the UNESCO Memory of the World programme), the Ada Evangeliar and the Trier Apocalypse; other early printed works include the Gutenberg Bible and original manuscripts by Nicholas of Cusa, Johann Wolfgang von Goethe and Karl Marx. In the centre of the room stand the two Coronelli globes of the earth and the heavens (Venice 1688 and 1693). – Photo: StB/StA Trier

### The German Digital Library

Germany has embarked on digitizing its historical holdings in compliance with UNESCO requirements to make the cultural heritage generally accessible, while at the same time using the high-quality digital content to realise the political objective of transforming the nation into a land of digital culture. The Federal Government has also indicated its wish to work towards this goal with its *Digital Agenda 2014–2017*. While the largest academic libraries established high-production digitization centres several years ago and since have been able to provide online global free access to a large number of manuscripts, printed music, early printed works and other items of value in their collections, other institutions are now also beginning to appreciate the chances digitization offers. It appears that easier access to

these holdings boosts interest in the cultural treasures thus preserved and tends to attract more people to museums, libraries, archives and other cultural institutions.

This means that libraries with holdings of historical interest also need to put them on display if they expect to generate or maintain enthusiasm for the cultural heritage. Currently a permanent or special exhibition is the favoured tool for achieving this end rather than an attractive book museum or a library Rare Books Room. New solutions such as the use of apps for mobile end devices to present virtual exhibitions point the way forward to the digital era.

Current expectations of finding everything online, featuring high-quality imagery, additional object-specific information and a high-performance presentation interface suitably adapted for use on any kind of end device presuppose the definition of the appropriate technical and specialised standards, such as those applicable to libraries. The creation of subject-specific, regional, national and international digital platforms allowing centralised access to the cultural heritage implies the existence of such standards along with other legal and financial preconditions. The task of merging heterogeneous data from many different sources presents a huge challenge, but also holds enormous potential.

The idea of the German Digital Library (DDB) is to present the entire spectrum of Germany's

cultural and scholarly treasures while at the same time ensuring Germany remains up-to-date and competitive in science, research and education. The DDB targets not only scientists and researchers but ordinary citizens too. In perspective it provides easy and free access to millions of books, archive materials, printed music, pictures, sculptures, musical works, sound and film documents. The DDB is financed jointly by the Federal Government and the states as stipulated in an agreement signed in 2009, with the overseeing body comprising delegates from all the various cultural and academic institutions funded by the Federal Government, states and local authorities. The network consists of the Members' Council, the Governing Board and the Board of Trustees; the secretariat is located at the Foundation of the Prussian Cultural Heritage in Berlin. Over 2,700 institutions are registered, though many partners do not send their cataloguing and metadata directly to the DDB but instead through one of the regional service centres.

In 2012 the beta version of the DDB was launched, in 2014 the first full version was released. In October 2016 the DDB portal, including its 300 partner institutions, already contained links to 20 million items. Not only does the DDB record digital holdings, it also indexes catalogue entries for items in archives not yet available in digital form in an attempt to compensate for the lack of a central German catalogue of both indexed and digitized archive materials. The DDB's Strategy Plan 2015–2020 sets out guidelines and priorities for the next few years, focusing on offering access to more and higher-quality cultural data, and expanding as a data platform.

The DDB is not only highly relevant at a purely national level; as a component of the

European Digital Library *Europeana* it also makes an important contribution to raising awareness and improving the visibility of the German cultural heritage at a European level. The *Europeana* collection, funded by the EU Commission and located in The Hague, unites the cultural heritages of all the member countries of the European Union. The collection guarantees free and democratic access to the cultural heritage for all interested citizens and is furthermore growing rapidly; in December 2016 the home page boasted access to well over 50 million works of art, books, videos, audios and other media.

Among the most prized written records of the cultural heritage are mediaeval manuscripts like the *Weingartener Liederhandschrift* pictured here; it belonged to the Benedictine Monastery in Weingarten until the dissolution of the monasteries, when it was transferred to the Württemberg State Library in Stuttgart (Baden-Württemberg) as HB XIII 1. It is one of the most important documents of German high mediaeval Minnesang and contains lyric works by numerous poets, including Hartmann von Aue (Portrait of the author Bl. 33r. – Photo WLB Stuttgart





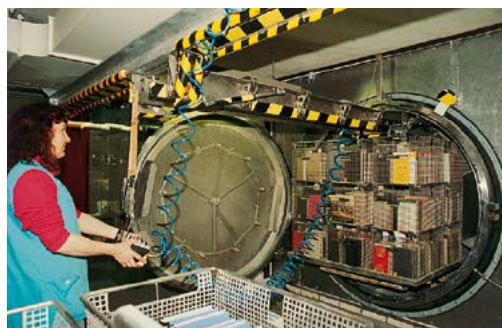
## Preservation and Conservation

Even in the digital world the printed original still retains its value. Global digital access brings huge advantages not only from a user perspective but also from a conservationist point of view. The availability of high-quality digital copies protects the originals from over-use; they can be stored in the stacks under ideal climatic conditions. Their preservation is one of the greatest challenges facing contemporary librarianship. The fire which badly damaged the Anna Amalia Library in Weimar in 2009 and the collapse of Cologne City Historical Archive in 2009 have both brought home to politicians and society as a whole the national urgency of preserving endangered original works.

To alert both political decision-makers and the public to the need for action the Alliance for the Preservation of Art and Cultural Heritage, founded in 2001 as an interest group of archives and libraries, issued a number of memoranda and statements on the issue. Each year the Alliance organises a National Day of Action for the Preservation of Art and Cultural Heritage; in 2014 it issued a statement listing its demands, the Weimar Appeal, which was signed by a number of celebrities.

At the suggestion of the Alliance, the Co-ordination Office for the Preservation of the Written Cultural Heritage (*Koordinierungsstelle für die Erhaltung des schriftlichen Kulturguts* – KEK) was established in 2011 at the State Library in Berlin with funding from the Federal Commissioner for Culture and the Media and the Cultural Foundation of the German Federal States. The Office's objective is to collect and evaluate information on the preservation of printed cultural assets, build networks to encourage collaboration among the holding institutions, raise public awareness of the dangers facing the printed cultural heritage and provide nationwide sponsorship for model projects.

A number of programmes and individual projects on the conservation and restoration of endangered holdings already exist at both federal and state level but an overall strategic concept for the preservation of national cultural assets is still lacking. In 2015 the



According to estimates, about 12% of the approximately 135 million books published in Germany after 1940 have already disintegrated and are thus no longer available for use; a further 30% are so yellowed that to avoid further damage they should be withdrawn from use. Individual books can only be subjected to restoration measures in certain cases; mass de-acidification, as carried out by the Centre for Book Preservation (Zentrum für Bucherhaltung GmbH) in Leipzig (Saxony), may be a possible alternative. – Photo: C. Seelbach

KEK published an appraisal of the current of affairs in the form of the “Action Guidelines for the Federal Commissioner for Culture and the Media and for the Standing Conference of the Cultural Ministers” (*Bundesweite Handlungsempfehlungen für die Beauftragte der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien und die Kultusministerkonferenz*). According to this report there are 1.8 million shelf metres of papers in archives and 9 million legal deposit titles published between 1951 and 1990 in libraries in need of mass deacidification, since acidic and wood-based paper was used for printing during this period. Even if only one percent of all endangered or damaged items were to be treated each year the cost would amount to around 63 million euros annually.

The number of inter-institutional and cross-sector programmes and projects focusing on preservation is increasing at both federal and state level. Some states have established expertise centres or departments for the preservation of archive and library holdings. The catastrophes already mentioned, and others such as the 2002 and 2013 Elbe and Danube floods, have prompted a number of German cities to group their local cultural institutions together to form emergency networks. These networks are charged with forging emergency plans, undertaking the prospective planning of recovery

measures, carrying out practical exercises, and making contact with the Fire Department and private providers of emergency intervention and freeze-drying services. For many years the Commission for Preservation and the Working Group on Preservation within Section 4 of the *dbv* have both been instrumental in facilitating the exchange of professional expertise.

## Research into Nazi Plunder

There exists another very important area of cultural asset research. Ever since the Washington Conference on Holocaust-Era Assets in 1998 Germany has felt a strong sense of obligation to find and return cultural assets confiscated from their previous owners, especially Jewish owners, during the period of National Socialist rule. In 1999 the Standing Conference of the Cultural Ministers issued a statement to this effect from the Federal Government, the federal states, and local central organisations. The Commissioner for Culture and the Media published guidelines to assist in implementing the provisions of this statement. In the library sector the appeals were reflected in the Hanover Appeal of 2002, which resulted in a number of events, including four symposia in Hanover, dedicated to Nazi plunder in general, and providing a forum for libraries who were already examining their own holdings for possible examples. Investigation into, and restitution of, art works confiscated by the Nazis first gained new impetus with the establishment of the Centre for Provenance Research (*Arbeitsstelle für Provenienzforschung*) in 2008 and the granting of state project funding. The *dbv* reacted to the increased attention being paid to the critical reappraisal of recent historical circumstances by establishing the Commission for Research and Indexing (*Kommission für Provenienzforschung und Provenienzerschließung*).

The process of checking and documenting ownership status for the period 1933 to 1945 is helped by a series of practical guidelines, a handbook on tracing works confiscated during the period of Nazi oppression and the database Looted Cultural Assets. Details of works moved or plundered during the Third Reich or the Second World War are recorded in the database Lost Art, hosted by the German Lost

Art Foundation (*Stiftung Deutsches Zentrum Kulturgutverluste*) in Magdeburg, which took over the work of the Centre for Provenance Research in 2015. The Foundation also conducts research into the war-related looting of art works in the Soviet occupation zone and the GDR. For many years archives and museums have conducted provenance research in the same way as libraries, often resulting in the restitution of confiscated books or in the payment of financial compensation to the former owners or their heirs.

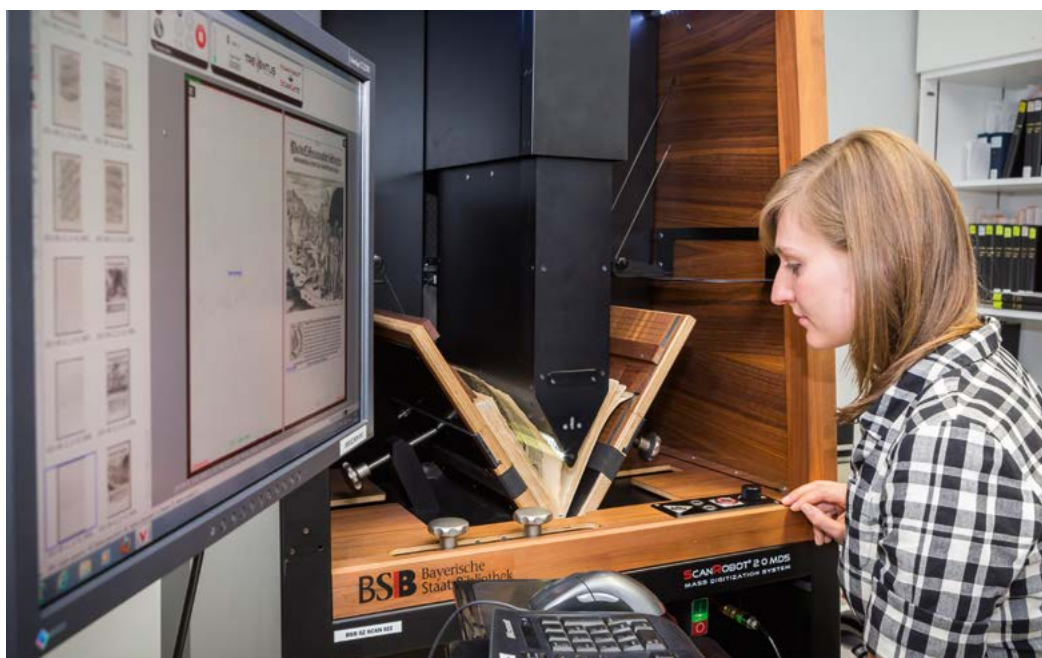
## The Digital Library

### Retrospective Digitization

For the last few years the main focus of librarianship activity has been on accelerating the development of the Digital Library. The libraries in the higher education sector have followed the recommendations of the academic and research sectors to become centres of digital information and publications. The funding programmes of the German Research Foundation are also attuned to the intensive expansion of electronic information provision services. The DDB's sponsoring body is an expertise network comprising delegates from all sectors.

Although the opinion often voiced by the contemporary press that the digitization of society in general is a cultural obligation and that libraries should therefore be committed to making themselves redundant, as it were, by digitizing the entire body of printed publications has been energetically repudiated by librarians, the magic word “digitization” is nevertheless almost ubiquitous in our libraries.

Digitization centres have been operating in Munich and Göttingen for years, and also accept external commissions. A large number of academic libraries have set up their own digitization centres and digitize selected holdings either on their own centres or in co-operation with partner libraries. The internet enterprise Google has launched a programme of mass digitization with its German partner, the Bavarian State Library. Libraries have no hope of winning against commercial financial heavyweights such as Google Books; however



The digitization centres in Munich (Bavaria) and Göttingen (Lower Saxony), both with the financial support of the DFG, participate in the development of the Distributed Digital Library through the conversion and presentation of digital resources. The Munich Digitization Centre (*Münchener Digitalisierungszentrum* – MDZ), pictured right, runs its own projects but also accepts digitization commissions from other institutions. Nine former Special Subject Fields Libraries under the aegis of the State and University Library of Göttingen formed a consortium for the digitization of journal holdings: *Digizeitschriften. Das Deutsche Digitale Zeitschriftenarchiv* e.V. lists around 930,000 articles from over 730 digitised scholarly journals. – Photo: H. R. Schulz, BSB Munich

the strength of library products lies not in their quantity but in their quality, and above all in their commitment to safeguarding free accessibility and long-term availability.

In 2005 a central system for the location and acquisition of freely accessible retrospectively digitized printed works published from the 15th century to the present, the Central Index of Digitized Imprints (*Das Zentrale Verzeichnis Digitalisierter Drucke* – ZVDD), was established on a cooperative basis; it currently contains records for 1.5 million titles. This portal not only provides a review of digital collections but also reflects the astonishing variety of digitization projects, revealing that the “philosophy” behind the digitization concept is wide-ranging. It offers a standardised search interface, with search fields for printer’s name, place of printing, period of publication (century), article title, chapter headings and table of contents. The ZVDD is a collaborative project managed by the Working Group on the Collection of German Imprints (*Arbeitsgemeinschaft Sammlung Deutscher Drucke*) and hosted by Göttingen State and University Library.

In the long term the German Digital Library (DDB) mentioned above, which offers a wide

range of users centralised, mostly free digital access to the culture and knowledge of the German-speaking area, is expected to play the more important role. Information from 30,000 cultural and academic institutions is to be drawn together in a common network. The national portal DDB forms part of the EU initiative for the development of a European Digital Library, which was launched towards the end of 2008 under the name *Europeana* and is dedicated to making the European cultural heritage generally accessible. The digital collections of the libraries are indexed in both portals.

## Open Access

The German library associations concur with research institutions and numerous scientific organizations in welcoming the opportunity the internet offers for the free promulgation of scholarly publications and guaranteed worldwide accessibility. The Berlin Declaration, published as far back as 2003, demanded open access to scholarly knowledge and the cultural heritage along the lines of other international Open Access declarations. In 2009 the Alliance of Science Organisations in Germany took up the idea, calling for an improvement in the information infrastructure in line with general Open Access principles.

The *Open Access movement* propagates a new strategy for scholarly communication in parallel to existing traditional channels, using the opportunities offered by the internet for the exchange of research results according to the “principle of open access”. The university presses founded by some universities mostly operate along open access lines, endorsing digital forms of publication and dispensing with parallel print editions. There is also a lack of the peer-review procedures or other quality control measures usually practised by traditional scholarly publishing houses. Two forms of Open Access strategy have evolved: “golden” and “green” Open Access options, though they can also complement each other, the first referring to primary or exclusive publication, the second to publication in parallel.

The principle assumes the active involvement of the producer of the scholarly knowledge or the manager of the cultural asset. With this form of publication, authors are required to grant freedom of access and right of use to all users, and also to hold a copy of the work on the archive server of a trustworthy institution, so that its long-term accessibility is assured.

Since this alternative publication model competes directly with the conventional form of dissemination practised by traditional publishers, the latter regard Open Access publishing with a critical eye. The same applies to many authors, who fear risks for both the producers and the recipients of research information; they are concerned about issues such as the quality control management of such publica-

tions, the integrity of the research data, the long-term availability of the documents, and the extent to which their internet publications will be recognised by the research community, for on this depends their personal reputation and academic career.

A group of publishers, authors and scholars approached the Federal Government in 2009 with the Heidelberg Appeal, demanding the protection of the copyright entitlements threatened by Open Access and companies like Google, and the confirmation of the authors’ continuing right to freedom of publication. The Appeal was directed against the stipulation of many university laws that authors of scholarly texts should secure secondary publication rights giving them permission to upload their publications to university repositories, thus ensuring free access.

## Long-term Archiving

The long-term archiving of electronic publications undoubtedly presents a huge challenge, one not facing libraries alone. The Law on the German National Library created the legal framework for the collection and storage of legal deposit copies of all “media works in non-physical form” published in Germany, ensuring general availability. In many cases the ruling regarding the collection of network publications has also been extended to cover the regional legal deposit libraries at federal state level. Much work has been done over the last few years in developing and testing the technical, organisational and library-related pre-requisites of long-term archiving.

“*Nestor*” – *German competence network for digital preservation* was established in 2003 as an information and communication platform for all interested partners, covering all aspects of long-term storage. *Nestor* is a collaborative network of partners from the library, archive, museum and computer centre sectors, concentrating on bundling collective expertise in a series of working groups, among other things. *Nestor* has developed a procedure for self-evaluation based on the DIN standard on Criteria for Trustworthy Digital Archives; successful candidates are awarded the *Nestor* seal of approval.



The project “Kopal – Cooperative Building of a Long-term Archive of Digital Information” (*Kooperativer Aufbau eines Langzeitarchivs digitaler Informationen*), which ran from 2004 to 2007, complemented *Nestor* in the technical, software development and workflow areas. In addition to two of Germany’s largest libraries, the Association for Scientific Data Computing (*Gesellschaft für wissenschaftliche Datenverarbeitung mbH – GWDG*) and the company IBM were also involved in the project, which was intended to create a reliable digital archive to safeguard the integrity, authenticity and accessibility of the digital archives stored there on a long-term basis. *Kopal* went live as a long-term digital archive in 2007 since when tens of thousands of electronic documents from its two project partners the German National Library and Göttingen State and University Library have been uploaded, including 100,000 electronic theses published since 1997 and submitted to the DNB by German universities.

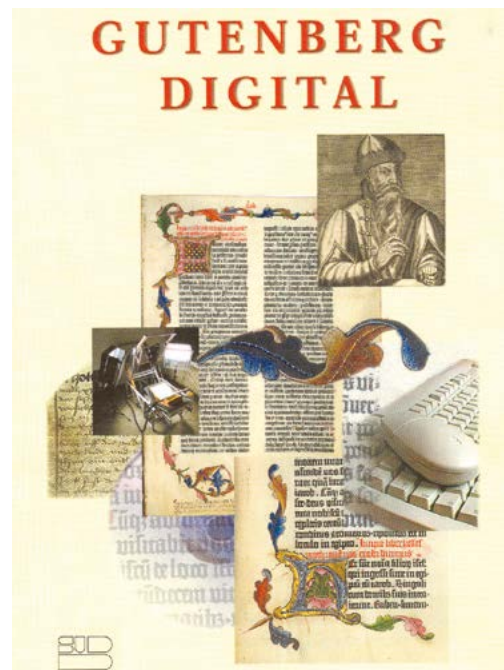
In view of the rapidly growing volume of digital information, academic libraries, archives and other memory institutions are all searching for practical solutions. This is particularly true of those libraries for which electronic resources represent the chief source of information provision. For example the TIB in Hanover has joined forces with its partners in *Goportis*, the Leibniz Library Network for Research Information, to set up a digital archiving system operating on the basis of commercial software; the system has since been adopted by other users.

On the grounds of volume alone the long-term archiving of web pages presents a particularly demanding challenge; in addition websites are being continually updated and therefore have a short life cycle. By December

2016 the world’s largest online collection, the not-for-profit Internet Archive in San Francisco had archived 280 billion web pages. In Germany the German National Library is responsible for archiving web pages in the domain “de”. Another example is the Library Archiving and Access System (*Bibliothekarisches Archivierungs- und Bereitstellungssystem – BABS*) developed by the Munich Digitization Centre MDZ as a long-term storage system; the workflow relating to the harvesting of the web pages has been adopted by Hamburg State and University Library.

It is deeply regrettable that although long-term digital archiving is undoubtedly a national priority it is as yet unclear whose responsibility it is and how it should be funded long-term. Long-term archiving is simply left to each individual institution, even though the funding agencies seem to be unaware that supplementary financial support is absolutely essential. At the same time there is a lack of clarity within society as a whole as to which digital data should actually be preserved in the first place.

On the 600th anniversary of the birth of Johannes Gutenberg, the Göttingen Digitization Centre (*Göttinger Digitalisierungszentrum – GDZ*) scanned all 1,282 pages of the parchment copy of the Gutenberg Bible held by the State and University Library of Göttingen (*Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Göttingen*) in Lower Saxony and made them available both on the internet and on CD-ROM. Between the first printing of this edition, which Gutenberg produced with the help of the new technology of the time, and its digitization in the year 2000 of exactly the same edition, there have elapsed around 550 years of book and library history. – Photo: GDZ



## Digital Information Structure

The internet presents libraries with a further challenge. Libraries are already feeling the effect of direct competition from search engines such as Google, which supposedly indexes several billion websites, and services like Google Scholar, Google Cloud Print, Google Earth or Google News or interactive platforms like Wikipedia and blogs, also known as social software and typical of the direction the internet is going (Web 2.0). A large number of library users, including students and university staff, start a search by using a search engine and often only later encounter services specifically provided by libraries. The technical and logical networking of the diverse forms of internet sources would seem to be a promising solution to this problem. The evolution of a *Semantic Web* (Web 3.0) and the *Linked Data* or *Linked Open Data* system will lead to the development of new search and information options. The data involved are available on the internet without legal restriction (open) and can be linked automatically to other data by means of a suitable description language (linked) in such a way that related content can be imported into the search.

Libraries will probably not be able to compete with the mighty commercial services on a quantitative basis; they will only be able to hold their own if they continue to maintain the high standards of their products. These include the high-quality indexing of research-relevant resources strictly on the basis of authority files, and the development of subject-centred and interdisciplinary search facilities and navigation systems. Notable national examples are the subject-specific entry portals with their former national knowledge portal *Vascoda*, or the Academic LinkShare network, a web-based system designed to facilitate the cooperative cataloguing and management of digital web objects and integrated into many of the Virtual Subject Libraries. Other examples are all-inclusive indexing and access systems such as the Database Info-System (DBIS) which lists 10,000 databases, including 4,750 titles freely accessible on line, and the Electronic Periodicals Library (*Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek*), providing access to 88,500 journal titles. It is also worth giving

another mention to the licensing of electronic journals, newspapers, books and databases.

Libraries must respond to changes in the availability of information and the behavioural patterns of their users by using an *integrated digital information system* in the medium term to create not only virtual research and learning environments but also a modern information management structure. The German Research Foundation (*Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft*) provides support for the development of just such an overall system of research information provision in the form of schemes such as its own programme for *Virtual Research Environments*, i.e. platforms enabling international researchers working simultaneously at different locations to coordinate their research activities whilst providing access to the required resources wherever they may be within the research infrastructure.

The aim of the “Digital Information” programme initiated by the Alliance of Science Organisations in Germany is to provide researchers with the optimal information structure for their research requirements. In 2008 it was agreed that efforts should be concentrated on six areas: national licensing, open access, national hosting strategy, primary (research) data, virtual research environments and legal framework conditions. The programme’s current second stage, due to run until the end of 2017, continues to focus on the priorities set in the initial phase from 2008 to 2012, concentrating on providing optimal comprehensive and free access to digital publications, research data and source collections, on establishing the best possible preconditions for the international dissemination and reception of both publications and research data, and on fully integrating digital media and content into digital research environments.

In accordance with the basic principles governing the treatment of research data adopted by the Alliance in 2010, many university libraries are adding research data management to their remit. The acquisition of the necessary personnel, organisation and technical resources also approved by the DFG will facilitate the collection, archiving, indexing of research data, and above all ensure long-term accessibility. As with access to other protected electronic resources





The management of digital research data stills remains at the focus of e-science structure development, even at a university offering its students a baroque learning environment like that pictured here in the Faculty Library of Economics and Social Sciences at the Communication, Information and Media Centre of the University in Hohenheim (Baden-Württemberg). Priorities are the creation of suitable tools alongside the provision of consultancy services for the academic staff and the establishment of an information platform.  
– Photo: Univ. Library Stuttgart-Hohenheim

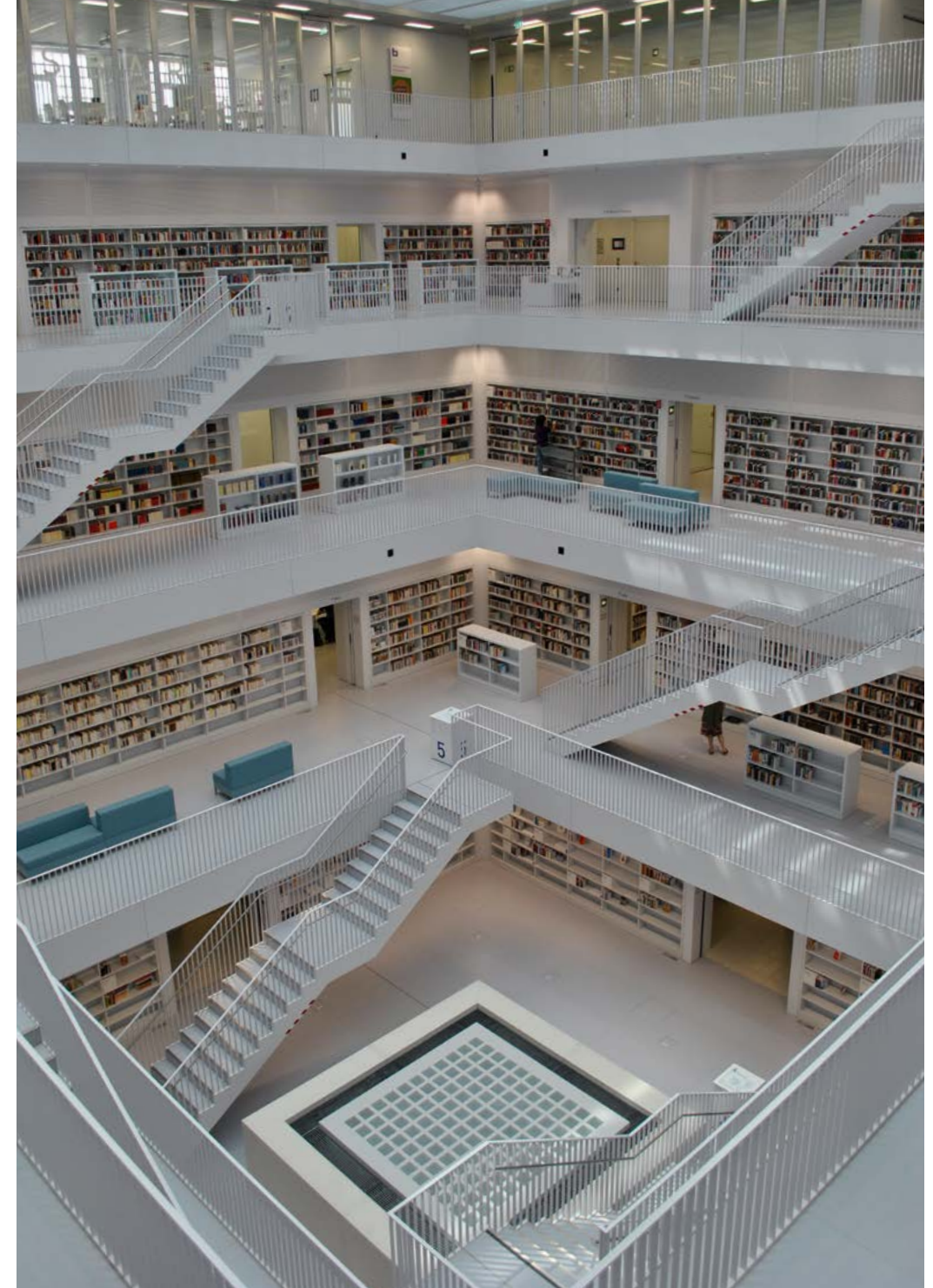
it will be necessary here too to consider developing a suitable rights management system

Libraries should be as determined to harness the new communication platforms to keep in touch with their users as they have been quick to seize the advantages of the internet for their information services. This entails utilising both social media and responsive web design to enable access to library services from mobile devices.

### Summary and Outlook

Libraries, whether public or academic, can only continue to provide their users with these services if their future is assured and if they receive sufficient financial and staff resources from their funding agencies. The future of the library is not only a question of form and technology; it also has a political dimension. It is essential to make it clear to the political decision-makers, the media, and indeed to the nation in general that libraries are destined to play a key role in the future information society. But they will

only be able to do this role—and its underlying expectations—justice if they recognize and accept the challenges of the information society, if they use every possible opportunity to develop new technology and improve their organisational efficiency, and if they effectively counteract the political, financial and structural weaknesses of the German library system. Then they will continue to be what they have always been: portals to the many new paths and visions leading to the future.



“Library 21”: This was the future-oriented library concept that preceded the planning of the new Main Library for the City Library in Stuttgart (Baden-Württemberg). The new building, opened in 2011 (architect: Eun Young Yi), soon established itself as the cultural heart of the new Europa district behind the main station and is part of the mammoth project *Stuttgart 21*. The monumental cube, with nine floors above-ground and two below, boasts an impressive interior with a funnel-shaped gallery housing the fiction collections, while the library’s remaining holdings are accommodated behind the gallery walls. Services include the café *Lesbar* (“readable”) and the roof-garden in addition to a lecture theatre and the Library for Insomniacs, an automatic machine dispensing books and audio-visual media round the clock. – Photo: B. Ehlig



## The Authors



**Jürgen Seefeldt, born in 1953,** studied public librarianship in Cologne. Held posts as Certified Librarian (*Diplom-Bibliothekar*) at the City Library (*Stadtbücherei*) of Hamm and the Technical Library of the United Electricity Corporation of Westphalia (*Vereinigte Elektrizitätswerke Westfalen*) in Dortmund; from 1979–1985 deputy director of the City Library (*Stadtbücherei*) of Herne, from 1989–1991 Director of the Country Libraries (*Kreisbüchereien*) of Unna; from 1991–2004 Director of the State Service Centre for Public Libraries (*Landesbüchereistelle*) Rhineland-Palatinate in Koblenz, from 2004 until 2014 Local Director of the Regional Library Centre of Rhineland-Pfalz; teaching contracts at the University of Applied Sciences, Cologne (*FH Köln*). From 1995–1998 co-editor of the professional journal *BuB*, from 1998–2001 member of the National Executive of the dbv, since 1998 chief executive of the dbv Regional Association for the Rhineland-Palatinate (*dbv-Landesverband Rheinland-Pfalz*). Author of numerous publications. Co-author of the book “Seefeldt/Metz: *Unterhaltungsliteratur in Öffentlichen Bibliotheken*”, the 3rd edition of the handbook “*Busse-Ernestus-Plassmann-Seefeldt: Das Bibliothekswesen in Deutschland*” and the textbook “*Bibliotheken und Informationsgesellschaft in Deutschland – eine Einführung*”.



**Dr. Ludger Syré, born in 1953,** studied history and German language and literature in Freiburg, Munich and Tübingen, gaining a doctorate in East European history; training as Academic and Research Librarian (*Wissenschaftlicher Bibliothekar*) in Tübingen and Cologne; since 1987 subject specialist for history, contributor to the State Bibliography (*Landesbibliographie*) of Baden-Württemberg and Head of Digitization at the State Library of Baden (*Badischen Landesbibliothek*) in Karlsruhe; instructor at the Institute for History of the University of Mannheim and at the House of Competence at KIT in Karlsruhe; between 1992 and 2002 two years on the Executive Board and eight years on the Membership Committee of the Association of German Librarians (*Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare*) as well as seven years as executive Director of the State Association of the VDB for Baden-Württemberg (*VDB-Landesverbandes Baden-Württemberg*); Author of numerous book and journal publications and editor of three special issues of the *ZfBB* on regional bibliographies, literary estates, and music.

## The Translator



**Janet MacKenzie,** studied French language and literature at Birmingham University (UK). She holds a postgraduate qualification in librarianship and is a member of the Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals. After five years as Tutor Librarian at a British university of applied sciences she left the UK in 1979 to become librarian at the Geschwister Scholl Institute of Political Science at the University of Munich. From 1996 to 2013 she was Site Librarian at one of the University's faculty libraries and has given various courses in English for Librarians at the Bavarian Library School.

## PICTURE REFERENCES

## Picture References (in order of appearance in the text)

Heinz-Jürgen Lorenzen (BID), 7  
 Ulm City Library (C.Seelbach), 8  
 University Library/IKMZ Cottbus (R. Schuster), 8  
 Codex rotundus, Cathedral Library Hildesheim (L. Engelhardt), 10  
 Evangelary of Henry the Lion, Duke August Library, Wolfenbüttel (HAB), 11  
 Schedel World Chronology, Court Library of the House of Hohen-zollern, Sigmaringen (C. Seelbach), 11  
 Codex Bruchsal 1 (Parchment manuscript) (BLB Karlsruhe), 12  
 Hall Library of the Benedictine Abbey in Wiblingen (R. Armbruster-Mayer), 12  
 State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage (SBB PK, Wikipedia), 14  
 State Library of Bamberg (C. Seelbach), 14  
 University and Regional Library of Saxony-Anhalt, Halle, exterior (ULB Halle), 15  
 University and Regional Library of Saxony-Anhalt, Halle, interior (ULB Halle), 15  
 Reichstag (Parliament) Library, Berlin (Picture Archive Prussian Cultural Heritage), 16  
 DNB Deutsche Bücherei, Leipzig (Klaus-D. Sonntag), 16/17  
 Library of the Hansa City of Lübeck (K. Raub), 17  
 Potsdam State and City Library (MJ Smets, Schulz-Speyer), 18  
 State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage, General Reading Room (C. Seifert, SBB), 19  
 Leipzig University Library (T. Kademann), 21  
 University and Research Library Erfurt/Gotha (S. Müller-Naumann), 22  
 Freiburg University Library (Univ. Library Freiburg/Media Centre), 22  
 Aurich Regional Library (C. Seelbach), 31  
 Regensburg, Libr. of Techn. Univ. (MJ Smets, Schulz-Speyer AG), 33  
 University Library Eichstätt, Business and Economics Subject Library Ingolstadt (C. Seelbach), 34  
 Study Centre of the Duchess Anna Amalia Library, Weimar (U. Schwarz, Klassik Stiftung Weimar), 35  
 Bookshop in Lindau/Lake Constance (L. Syré), 37  
 Generallandesarchiv (General Regional Archive) Baden-Württemberg, Karlsruhe (GLA Karlsruhe), 39

Library of the Episcopal Seminary in Trier (Episcopal Seminary Trier), 41  
 Court Library of the Prince of Thurn and Taxis, Regensburg (L.W. Splitta, Prince of Thurn and Taxis Central Archives), 42  
 German National Library, Frankfurt am Main (S. Jockel, DNB), 43  
 German Music Archive in the DNB, Leipzig (Kunstmann, DNB), 44  
 State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage C. Seelbach), 46  
 Bavarian State Library, Munich (BSB), 47  
 German National Library of Medicine, Cologne (ZB MED), 48  
 Regional Library of Oldenburg (C. Seelbach), 50  
 Leibniz' Calculator, Regional Library of Lower Saxony, Hanover (GW Library), 51  
 State and City Library of Augsburg (Augsburg State and City Library), 51  
 Francke Foundations, Halle (W. Ziegler), 52  
 Historicum of the University Library Munich (J. Feist, ekz), 53  
 Codex Manesse, Walter von der Vogelweide, University Library of Heidelberg (Lossen, UL Heidelberg), 54  
 KIT Karlsruhe Institute of Technology (T. Mechau), 55  
 Konstanz University of Applied Sciences (B. Hannemann, HTWK Konstanz), 56  
 Munich City Library Law Library (M. Schwarz), 57  
 German National Library of Economics, Kiel (L. Roth, ZBW), 58  
 German Literature Archive Marbach (M. Michaelis, DLA Marbach), 58/59  
 Library of the Benedictine Abbey in Maria Laach (Maria Laach Abbey), 60  
 Landau City Library (J. Feist, ekz), 62  
 Dortmund City and Regional Library (exterior), (J. Feist, ekz), 63  
 Duisburg City Library, Main Library (krischerfotografie), 64  
 Art Library of the City Library in Biberach an der Riss (J. Seefeldt), 65  
 Book Bus, Koblenz City Library (J. Seefeldt), 69  
 Book Bus, City Library, Frankfurt am Main (City Library, Frankfurt am Main), 69  
 Central Library, Hamm City Libraries (City of Hamm), 70  
 Augsburg City Library (U. Schambeck), 71  
 City Library Westerstede (J. Feist, ekz), 72  
 City Library Bernburg/Saale (J. Feist, ekz), 73  
 International Youth Library in Blutenburg Palace, Munich (IJB), 74  
 School Library/Media Centre of the Secondary Schools in the Heinz Engler Forum in Biberach an der Riss (J. Feist, ekz), 76/77

German Music Archive in the DNB Leipzig, Piano (Kunstmann), 79  
 Music Library, Mannheim City Library (D. Jakob), 79  
 Wismar City Library (J. Seefeldt), 81  
 Duisburg City Library (krischer-fotografie Duisburg), 83  
 Heidelberg City Library, Anniversary Festival (Heidelberg City Library), 84  
 Bremen City Library, TeenSpirit (Bremen City Library), 85  
 Company works library at Wacker Chemie AG, Burghausen (Wacker AG), 89  
 Duisburg City Library, Circulation desk (Duisburg City Library), 91  
 Multimedia Reading Room of the German National Library, Frankfurt am Main (S. Jockel, DNB), 93  
 Stuttgart Media University (HdM Stuttgart), 94/95  
 Heinrich Heine City Library, Halberstadt (J. Feist, ekz), 102  
 Onleihe screen in a library (ekz), 107  
 Laminating machine at the ekz (ekz), 108  
 Gütersloh City Library (D. Güthenke, Gütersloh), 109  
 Library of the Goethe Institute in Warsaw, Poland (A. Burakowski, Goethe Institute Warsaw), 111  
 Philology Library of the Free University of Berlin (P. v. Recklinghausen), 114  
 Lower Saxony State and University Library of Göttingen (SUB Göttingen), 116/117  
 State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage (C. Seelbach), 118  
 Baden Regional Library, Karlsruhe (C. Seelbach), 119  
 Saxon State and University Library of Dresden (SLUB), Reading Room (F. Bieler), 120  
 Saxon State and University Library Dresden (SLUB), makerspace (L. Boxberger), 121  
 Historical Reading Room of Tübingen University Library (C. Seelbach), 122  
 Augusteer Hall of the Duke August Library, Wolfenbüttel (Duke August Library), 123  
 Würzburg City Library (K. Trutzki), 125  
 Karlsruhe Virtual Catalogue Screenshot, 130  
 Digital Library (Digibib) Screenshot, 132  
 Rococo Room of the Duchess Anna Amalia Library, Weimar (Klassik Stiftung Weimar), 133  
 Library of the former Benedictine monastery at Amorbach (C. Seelbach), 134  
 Württemberg State Library, Stuttgart (WLB Stuttgart), 135  
 University Library and Technical Information Library of Hanover (MJ Smets, Schulz-Speyer AG), 136  
 Koblenz City Library (Juraschek Lifestyle, Koblenz), 139

Regional Library of Mecklenburg-West Pomerania, Schwerin (A. Botefür), 140  
Kreuztal City Library, interior (J. Feist, ek2), 141  
Media Centre Neckarsulm (D. Strauss), 142  
Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm Centre, Humboldt University Berlin (M. Bulaty), 143  
Saarbrücken City Library, Children's Library (form.bar by okinlab), 145  
Krefeld Media Centre (M. Kramer, Krefeld), 146  
Neufahrn Public Library (J.Feist), 147  
University and Regional Library of Thuringia, Jena (P. Scheere, FSU Jena), 149  
Saxon State and University Library Dresden (SLUB), Rare Books Room (H. Ahlers, SLUB), 151  
Trier City Library, Rare Books Room (Stb/StA Trier), 152  
Württemberg State Library in Stuttgart, Hartmann von Aue manuscript (WLB Stuttgart), 153  
Centre for Book Preservation, Leipzig (C. Seelbach), 154  
Munich Digitization Centre in the Bavarian State Library (H. R. Schulz, BSB Munich), 156  
Gutenberg Bible digital edition, Göttingen Digitization Centre (GDZ), 158  
Stuttgart-Hohenheim University Library (Stuttgart-Hohenheim Univ. Library), 160  
Stuttgart City Library (B. Ehlig), 161  
Jürgen Seefeldt, author, 162  
Ludger Syré, author, (B. Ehlig), 162  
Janet MacKenzie, translator, 162

**The illustrations on the front cover show from top to bottom:**  
Berlin State Library, Unten den Linden building, Reading Room (C. Seifert, SBB-PK Berlin  
Freiburg University Library (UB Freiburg Medienzentrum)  
German National Library, Leipzig (PUNCTUM, A. Schmidt)  
Stuttgart City Library (J. Feist, ek2)

**The illustrations on the rear cover show from top to bottom:**  
Munich City Law Library (M. Schwarz)  
Library of the former Benedictine monastery at Wiblingen (R. Armbruster-Mayer)  
Library of the Benedictine monastery at Maria Laach (Abtei Maria Laach)

**Alphabetical Index of Pictures by Location**

Amorbach, Library of the Prince of Leiningen, 134  
Augsburg, City Library, 71  
Augsburg, State and City Library, 51  
Aurich, Regional Library, 31  
Bamberg, State Library, 14  
Berlin, Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm Centre, 143  
Berlin, Philology Library of the Free University, 114  
Berlin, Reichstag (Parliament) Library, 16  
Berlin, State Library of Berlin—Prussian Cultural Heritage, 12, 16, 46, 118  
Bernburg/Saale, City Library, 73  
Biberach an der Riss, Art Library, 65  
Biberach an der Riss, School Library/ Media Centre of the Secondary Schools in the Heinz Engler Forum, 76/77  
Bremen, City Library, 85  
Burghausen, Company works library at Wacker Chemie AG, 89  
Cologne, German National Library of Medicine (Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für Medizin), 48  
Cottbus, IKMZ BTU, 8  
Dortmund, City and Regional Library, 63  
Dresden, Saxon State and University Library (SLUB), 120, 121, 151  
Duisburg, City Library, 64, 83, 91  
Erfurt, University and Research Library Erfurt/Gotha, 22  
Frankfurt am Main, City Library Book Bus, 69  
Frankfurt am Main, German National Library, 43, 93  
Freiburg, University Library, 22  
Göttingen, Lower Saxony State and University Library, 116/117, 156  
Gütersloh, City Library, 109  
Halberstadt, Heinrich Heine City Library, 102  
Halle, Library of the Francke Foundations, 52  
Halle, University and Regional Library of Saxony-Anhalt, 15  
Hamm, Central Library, Hamm City Libraries, 70  
Hanover, Regional Library of Lower Saxony, 51  
Hanover, University Library / Technical Information Library, 136  
Heidelberg, City Library, 84  
Heidelberg, University Library, 54  
Hildesheim, Cathedral Library, 10  
Ingolstadt, University Library Eichstätt, Business and Economics Subject Library, 34  
Jena, University and Regional Library of Thuringia, 149  
Karlsruhe, Baden Regional Library, 12, 119  
Karlsruhe, Generallandesarchiv

(General Regional Archive)  
Baden-Württemberg, 39  
Karlsruhe, Karlsruhe Institute of Technology KIT, 53  
Kiel, German National Library of Economics, 58  
Koblenz, City Library, 139  
Koblenz, City Library Book Bus, 69  
Konstanz University of Applied Sciences, 56  
Krefeld, Media Centre, 146  
Kreuztal, City Library, 141  
Landau, City Library, 62  
Leipzig, Centre for Book Preservation, 154  
Leipzig, DNB Deutsche Bücherei, 16/17  
Leipzig, German Music Archive in the DNB, 44, 79  
Leipzig, University Library, 21  
Lindau, bookshop, 37  
Lübeck, City Library, 17  
Mannheim, City Library Music Library, 79  
Marbach, German Literature Archive, 58/59  
Maria Laach, Library of the Benedictine Abbey, 60  
Munich, Bavarian State Library, 47, 156  
Munich, City Library Law Library, 57  
Munich, Historicum of the University Library, 53  
Munich, International Youth Library, 74  
Neckarsulm, Media Centre, 142  
Neufahrn, Public Library, 147  
Oldenburg, Regional Library, 50  
Potsdam, State and City Library, 18  
Regensburg, Court Library of the Prince of Thurn and Taxis, 42  
Regensburg, Libr. of Techn. Univ., 33  
Reutlingen, ekz Library Suppliers GmbH, 108  
Saarbrücken, City Library, Children's Library, 145  
Schwerin, Regional Library of Mecklenburg-West Pomerania, 140  
Sigmariningen, Court Library of the House of Hollenzollern, 11  
Stuttgart, City Library, 161  
Stuttgart, Stuttgart Media University, 94/95  
Stuttgart, Stuttgart-Hohenheim University Library, 160  
Stuttgart, Württemberg State Library, 135, 153  
Trier, City Library, Rare Books Room, 152  
Trier, Episcopal Seminary, 41  
Tübingen, University Library, 122  
Ulm, City Library, 8  
Warsaw, Library of the Goethe Institute, 111  
Weimar, Duchess Anna Amalia Library, 35, 133  
Westerstede, City Library, 72  
Wiblingen, Hall Library, 12  
Wismar, City Library, 81  
Wolfenbüttel, Duke August Library, 11, 123  
Würzburg, City Library, 125

**Winners of the National Library Prize „Library of the Year“**

2000: Halberstadt City Library (SaxonyAnhalt)  
2001: Johannes a Lasco Library, Emden (Lower Saxony)  
2002: State and University Library of Göttingen (Lower Saxony)  
2003: Würzburg City Library (Bavaria)  
2004: Dresden City Libraries (Saxony)  
2005: Hamm City Libraries (North Rhine-Westphalia)  
2006: Cottbus University Library (IKMZ (Brandenburg)  
2007: Prison Library of the Münster Penitentiary (North Rhine-Westphalia)  
2008: Bavarian State Library (Munich)  
2009: City Library of Biberach an der Riß (Baden-Württemberg)  
2010: Constance University Library (Baden-Württemberg)  
2011: Anton Saefkow Library in Berlin Lichtenberg  
2012: Library of Wildau Technical University of Applied Sciences (Brandenburg)  
2013: Stuttgart City Library (Baden-Württemberg)  
2014: German Central Library of Economics (Kiel—Schleswig-Holstein und Hamburg)  
2015: Cologen City Library (North Rhine-Westphalia)  
2016: Hilden City Library (North Rhine-Westphalia)

**Holders of the BID Karl Preusker Medal**

1996: Peter Härtling, author, Mörfelden-Walldorf  
1997: Dr. Annette Kasper, director of the Ernst Abbe Library (City Library) Jena  
1998: Christa Spangenberg, publisher, Munich  
1999: Jürgen Heckel, director of Garching Public Library  
2000: Roswitha Kuhnert, Dipl.-Bibl., Leipzig City Libraries  
2001: Bettina Windau, head of the Public Libraries Department of the Bertelsmann Foundation, Gütersloh  
2002: Dr. h.c. Erich Loest, author, Leipzig  
2003: Dr. Regina Peeters, library director, Europäisches Übersetzer-Kollegium NRW in Straelen e.V. (European College of Translators)  
2004: Angelika Casper, Christel Mannhardt and Ina Philippsen-Schmidt, for their campaign to save Cologne's City Libraries “Leselust statt Pisa-frust” (Books instead of Pisa blues)

2005: Birgit Dankert, Prof. of Library Science in the Faculty of Libraries and Information at Hamburg University of Applied Sciences  
2006: Prof. Dr. Dr. h.c. mult. Paul Raabe, former Library Director in Marbach and Wolfenbüttel  
2007: Georg Salzmann, Library of burned books, documentation and research archive “10. Mai 1933—German literature burned at the stake”, Gräfeling  
2008: Martin Weskott, Gesellschaft zur Förderung von Kultur und Literatur e.V., “Bücherburg” Katlenberg (Niedersachsen) (Association for the Promotion of Culture and Literature, “Book Castle”)  
2009: Marion Schulz, Stiftung Frauen-Literatur-Forschung (Foundation Women's Literature Research e.V), Bremen  
2010: Not awarded  
2011: Horst Köhler, former President of the German Federal Republic, Berlin  
2012: Ranga Yogeshwar, physicist and science journalist, Cologne  
2013: Prof. Dr. Dr. h.c. Bernhard Fabian, Anglicist and book studies researcher, Münster  
2014: Thomas Feibel, author, journalist and media specialist, Berlin  
2015: Prof. Dr. Konrad Umlauf, library and information scientist, Berlin  
2016: Thomas Beyer, mayor of the City of Wismar (Mecklenburg-Vorpommern)

**Further Reading (A Selection) Books and Yearbooks**

**Alker, Stefan; Bauer, Bruno; Stumpf, Markus:** NS-Provenienzforschung und Restitution an Bibliotheken. – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – 141 p.  
**Aufbruch als Ziel—BID und “Bibliothek 2007”:** Zum Abschluss der sechsjährigen Amtszeit Georg Ruppelts als Sprecher von Bibliothek & Information Deutschland/Hg.: Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V. – Hildesheim u.a.: Olms, 2006. – 249 p.: ill.  
**Ball, Rafael:** Bibliometrie im Zeitalter von Open und Big Data: Das Ende des klassischen Indikatorenkanons. – Wiesbaden: Dinges& Frick, 2015. – 156 p.  
**Bau- und Nutzungsplanung von Bibliotheken und Archiven:** Ersatz für DIN-Fachbericht 13: 1998/ DIN Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V. – Berlin [u.a.]: Beuth, 2009. – 132 p.: ill. – (DIN-Fachbericht; 13).

**Benutzungsdienste in Bibliotheken:** Bestands- und Informationsvermittlung / Wilhelm Hilpert, Bertold Gillitzer, Sven Kuttner, Stephan Schwarz. – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2014. – 337 p. – (Bestands- und Informationspraxis; 52)  
**Bericht zu Lage der Bibliotheken 2015 /** Deutscher Bibliotheksverband. Frank Simon-Ritz. – Berlin: dbv, 2015. – 12 p.  
**Bericht zur Lage der Bibliotheken 2016/17 /** Deutscher Bibliotheksverband. Barbara Lison. – Berlin: dbv, 2016. – 12 p.  
**Berufsbild 2000—Bibliotheken und Bibliothekare im Wandel /** erarb. von der Arbeitsgruppe “Gemeinsames Berufsbild” der BDB e.V. Unter Leitung von Ute Krauß-Leichert. – 2., unveränd. Nachdr. der dt. Fassung, erg. um die engl. Version. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick, 2000. – 125 p.  
**Bibliothek der Zukunft. Zukunft der Bibliothek: Festschrift für Elmar Mittler anlässlich seines 75. Geburtstages /** hrsg. von Andreas Degkwitz. – Berlin (u.a.): De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – X, 203 p.: ill.  
**Bibliothek 2007:** Strategiekonzepte / Bertelsmann Stiftung; Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände (Hrsg.). Von Gabriele Beger u.a. – 3. Aufl. – Gütersloh: Verl. Bertelsmann Stiftung, 2004. – 40 p.  
**Bibliothekare zwischen Verwaltung und Wissenschaft:** 200 Jahre Berufsbilddebatte / hrsg. von Irmgard Siebert and Thorsten Lemanski. – Frankfurt/Main: Klostermann 2014. – 278 p. (ZfBB Sonderband; 111)  
**Bibliotheken '93:** Strukturen, Aufgaben, Positionen / Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände. – Berlin: Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut; Göttingen: Niedersächsische Staats- u. Univ.-Bibliothek, 1994. – vi, 182 p.: ill.  
**Bibliotheken bauen und ausstatten /** Petra Hauke u. Klaus Ulrich Werner (Hrsg.). – Bad Honnef: Bock + Herchen, 2009. – 432 p.  
**Bibliotheken heute! Best Practice bei Planung, Bau und Ausstattung /** hrsg. von Petra Hauke u. Klaus Ulrich Werner. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2011. – 320 p.: ill.  
**Bibliotheken und Informationsgesellschaft in Deutschland:** eine Einführung / Engelbert Plassmann, Hermann Rösch, Jürgen Seefeldt, Konrad Umlauf. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2006. – x, 333 p.  
**Bibliotheken 2040:** die Zukunft neu entwerfen / Red. Rob Bruijnzeels u. Nicole van Tiggelen. Übers. von



Uta Klaassen. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2003. – 83 p.: ill., maps  
**Bibliothekspolitik in Ost und West:** Geschichte und Gegenwart des Deutschen Bibliotheksverbandes / hrsg. von Georg Ruppelt. – Frankfurt am Main: Klostermann, 1998. – vi, 322 p.; (Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie: Sonderhefte; 72).

**Brenner-Wilczek, Sabine; Cepl-Kaufmann, Gertrude; Plassmann, Max:** Einführung in die moderne Archivarbeit. – Sonderausg. – Darmstadt: Wissenschaftl. Buchgesellschaft, 2016. – 152 p.

**Brockerhoff, Christiane:** Interne Kommunikation in der Bibliothek. – Berlin: De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – viii, 179 p.: ill.

**Bruhn, Manfred:** Qualitätsmanagement für Dienstleistungen: Grundlagen, Konzepte, Methoden. – 7., überarb. u. erw. Aufl. – Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer, 2008. – 617 p.

**Buch und Buchhandel in Zahlen /** hrsg. vom Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels e.V. – Frankfurt a.M.: MVB Marketing- u. Verlagsservice des Buchhandels. – 2010. – 128 p.: ill., tables, maps. – Publ. annually (2016 latest)

**Bücher öffnen Welten:** Medienangebote für Menschen in Haft in Deutschland und international / Gerhard Peschers, Förderverein Gefangenenbüchereien e.V. (Hrsg.). – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2013. – x, 417 p.: ill.(Bibliotheks- und Informationspraxis; 54)

**Buzás, Ladislaus:** Deutsche Bibliotheksgeschichte des Mittelalters / Ladislaus Buzás. – Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1975. – 191 p.; (Elemente des Buch- und Bibliothekswesens; 1).

**Buzás, Ladislaus:** Deutsche Bibliotheksgeschichte der Neuzeit (1500–1800) / Ladislaus Buzas. – Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1976. – 203 p.; (Elemente des Buch- und Bibliothekswesens; 2).

**Buzás, Ladislaus:** Deutsche Bibliotheksgeschichte der neuesten Zeit (1800–1945) / Ladislaus Buzas. – Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1978. – 215 p.; (Elemente des Buch- und Bibliothekswesens; 3)

**„Challenge accepted!“:** Bibliotheken stellen sich der Herausforderung des Demografischen Wandels; Positionen—Strategien—Modelle & Projekte / hrsg. von Petra Hauke. Mit einem Geleitw. von Frank Simon-Ritz. – Bad Honnef: Bock u. Herchen, 2014. – xx, 392 p.: ill.

**Deeg, Christoph:** Gaming und Bibliotheken / Christoph Deeg. – Berlin [u.a.]: De Gruyter Saur, 2014. – x, 167 p.: ill.

**Einundzwanzig (21) gute Gründe für gute Bibliotheken /** hrsg. von der BID—Bibliothek & Information Deutschland. Konzept und Inhalt: Gabriele Beger u.a. Text: Anne Buhrfeind. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2009. – 28 p.

**Entwurfsatlas Bibliotheken /** Nolan Lushington; Wolfgang Rudolf; Liliane Wong (Hrsg.). Basel: Birkhäuser Verl., 2016. – 263 p.

**Entscheidungssammlung zum Bibliotheksrecht /** hrsg. von der Rechtskommission des Deutschen Bibliotheksinstituts u.a. Erarbeitet von: Jürgen Christoph Gödan u.a. 2., überarb. u. erw. Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2003. – 656 p.

**Entwurfsatlas Bibliotheken /** Nolan Lushington; Wolfgang Rudolf; Liliane Wong (Hrsg.). Basel: Birkhäuser Verl., 2016. – 263 p.

**Erfolgreiches Management von Bibliotheken und Informationseinrichtungen:** Fachratgeber für die Bibliotheksleitung und Bibliothekare / Hrsg.: Hans-Christoph Hobohm, Konrad Umlauf. – Hamburg: Verl. Dashöfer, 2002. – 700 p. – Loose-leaf edition

**Ewert, Gisela; Umstätter, Walther:** Lehrbuch der Bibliotheksverwaltung / auf d. Grundlage d. Werkes von Wilhelm Krabbe u. Wilhelm Martin Luther völlig neu bearb. von Gisela Ewert u. Walther Umstätter. – Stuttgart: Hiersemann, 1997. – xv, 204 p.

**Fingerle, Birgit Inken; Mummenthaler, Rudolf:** Innovationsmanagement in Bibliotheken. Berlin (u.a.): De Gruyter Saur, 2016. 186 p.: ill (Praxiswissen)

**Freundeskreise und Fördervereine: Best Practice in Öffentlichen Bibliotheken /** hrsg. Von Petra Hauke. Berlin (u.a.): De Gruyter Saur, 2015. – xiii, 241 p.: ill.

**Gantert, Klaus; Hacker, Rupert:** Bibliothekarisches Grundwissen. – 8., vollst. neu bearb. u. erw. Auflage. – München: Saur, 2008. – 414 p.: ill.

**Gaus, Wilhelm:** Berufe im Informationswesen: ein Wegweiser zur Ausbildung; Archiv, Bibliothek, Buchwissenschaft, Information und Dokumentation, Medizinische Dokumentation, Medizinische Informatik, Computerlinguistik, Museum / Wilhelm Gaus. – 5., vollständig überarbeitete Aufl. – Berlin [u.a.]: Springer, 2002. – 310 p.

**Göttker, Susanne:** Literaturversorgung in Deutschland: Von den Sondersammelgebieten zu den Fachinformationsdiensten; eine Analyse. – Wiesbaden: Dinges & Frick, 2016. – 224 p.

**Grundlagen der praktischen Information und Dokumentation /** Ein Handbuch zur Einführung in die fachliche

Informationsarbeit / Rainer Kühlen u.a. [Hrsg.]. Begr. von Klaus Laisiepen. – 5., voll. neu gefasste Ausg. – München: Saur, 2004. —xlviii, 910 p. Vol. 1: Handbuch zur Einführung in die Informationswissenschaft und -praxis Vol. 2: Glossar

**Grundwissen Medien, Information, Bibliothek /** Umlauf, Konrad (Hrsg.). – Stuttgart: Hiersemann, 2016.– vi, 290 p. (Bibliothek des Buchwesens; 25)

**Gutachtensammlung zum Bibliotheksrecht:** Gutachten, Stellungnahmen, Empfehlungen. – Red.: Jürgen Christoph Gödan. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2002. – xiv, 618 p. (Bibliotheksrecht; Bd. 1)

**Handbuch Archiv:** Geschichte, Aufgaben, Perspektiven / Marcel Lepper; Ulrich Rauff (Hrsg.). Stuttgart: JB Metzler, 2016. – 294 p.

**Handbuch Bibliothek:** Geschichte, Aufgaben, Perspektiven / hrsg. Von Konrad Umlauf und Stefan Gradmann. Stuttgart: JB Metzler, 2012. ix, 422 p.

**Handbuch Bibliothek 2.0 /** Hrsg. Julia Bergmann, Patrick Danowski. – Berlin, New York: de Gruyter Saur, 2010. – 392 p.

**Handbuch der Bibliotheken Deutschland, Österreich, Schweiz. –** 16. Aufl. – Berlin: de Gruyter, 2010.

**Handbuch Hochschulbibliothekssysteme:** leistungsfähige Informationsstrukturen für Wissenschaft und Studium / Konstanze Söllner; Wilfried Sühl-Strohmer (Hrsg.): Berlin (u.a.): De Gruyter Saur, 2014. – xv, 608 p.: ill.

**Handbuch Informationskompetenz /** Wilfried Sühl-Strohmer (Hrsg.). – 2. Aufl. – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – 575 p.

**Handbuch Methoden der Bibliotheks- und Informationswissenschaft:** Bibliotheks-, Benutzerforschung, Informationsanalyse / Konrad Umlauf, Simone Fühles-Ubach, Michael Seale (Hrsg.)—Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2013. – 561 p.

**Hanke, Ulrike; Sühl-Strohmer, Wilfried:** Bibliotheksdidaktik: Konzepte zur Förderung von Informationskompetenz. – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2015. – 213 p. (Bibliotheks- und Informationspraxis; 58)

**Heyde, Konrad:** Letzte Bibliotheken: Reflexe eines schwindenden Zeitalters. – Norderstedt: Books on Demand, 2016. – 117 p.

**Holste-Flinsbach, Karin:** Der Fachangestelltenberuf im Bibliothekswesen und seine Vorläuferausbildungen: Ausbildungsformen für mittlere und praktische Berufe in deutschen Bibliotheken mit

nicht-akademischer Ausbildung zur beruflichen Fachkraft. Wiesbaden: Dinges & Frick, 2016. – 165 p. (B.I.T-Online; innovativ; 57)

**Holste-Flinsbach, Karin:** Prüfungshandbuch FaMI-Ausbildung: Übungsaufgaben für die Zwischen- und Abschlussprüfung. – Bad Honnef: Bock + Herchen, 2014. – 214 p.: ill.

**100. Deutscher Bibliothekartag Berlin—Festschrift /** im Auftr. des Vereins Deutscher Bibliothekare (VDB) u. des Berufsverbands Information Bibliothek (BIB) hrsg. von Felicitas Hundhausen, Daniela Lülfig u. Wilfried Sühl-Stromenger. – Hildesheim: Olms, 2011–258 p.

**Jahrbuch der Deutschen Bibliotheken /** hrsg. vom Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz. – Bd. 67 (2017/2018). – Published biennially.

**Jahrbuch kirchliches Buch- und Bibliothekswesen.** Regensburg: Schnell & Steiner. NF ab 2013

**Jaksch, Ursula:** Auf dem Weg zur „Ausgezeichneten Bibliothek“—effizientes Qualitätsmanagement in Bibliotheken. – Wiesbaden: Dinges & Frick, 2014. – 124 p.

**Jochum, Uwe:** Geschichte der abendländischen Bibliotheken. – Darmstadt: Primus 2009. – 160 p.: ill.

**Jochum, Uwe:** Kleine Bibliotheksgeschichte / von Uwe Jochum. – 3., verb. u. erw. Aufl. – Stuttgart: Reclam, 2007. – 280 p.; (Universal-Bibliothek; Nr. 17667).

**Keller-Loibl, Kerstin:** Das Image von Bibliotheken bei Jugendlichen: Empirische Befunde und Konsequenzen für Bibliotheken. – Bad Honnef: Bock + Herchen, 2012. – 252 p.

**Keller-Loibl, Kerstin / Brandt, Susanne:** Leseförderung in Öffentlichen Bibliotheken. – Berlin (u.) De Gruyter Saur, 2014. – x, 201 p.: ill.

**Kirmse, Renate:** Schulbibliothek. – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2013. – 228 p.

**Knoche, Michael:** Auf dem Weg zur Forschungsbibliothek; Studien aus der Herzogin Anna Amalia Bibliothek. – Frankfurt/Main: Klostermann, 2016. 246 p. (ZfBB Sonderband 120)

**Kuth, Martina:** Praktisches Management in One Person Libraries. Berlin (u.a.): De Gruyter Saur, 2015. – x, 135 p.: ill.

**Lux, Claudia; Sühl-Strohmer, Wilfried:** Teaching Library in Deutschland: Vermittlung von Informations- und Medienkompetenz als Kernaufgabe für Öffentliche und Wissenschaftliche Bibliotheken. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick, 2004. – 248 p.: ill. (BIT online innovativ; 9)

**Die moderne Bibliothek:** ein Kompendium der Bibliotheksverwaltung / hrsg. von Rudolf Frankenberger und Klaus Haller. – München: Saur, 2004. – 449 p.

**Plassmann, Engelbert; Seefeldt, Jürgen:** Das Bibliothekswesen der Bundesrepublik Deutschland: ein Handbuch / von Engelbert Plassmann und Jürgen Seefeldt. – 3., völlig neubearbeitete Auflage des durch Gisela von Busse und Horst Ernestus begründeten Werkes. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz 1999. – xii, 510 p.: ill., maps

**Politik für Bibliotheken:** die Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände (BDB) im Gespräch; Birgit Dankert zum Ende ihrer Amtszeit als Sprecherin der BDB / hrsg. von Georg Ruppelt. – München: Saur, 2000. – 208 p.

**Praktische Archivkunde:** Ein Leitfaden für Fachangestellte für Medien- und Informationsdienste—Fachrichtung Archiv / Norbert Reimann (Hrsg.)—Münster: Ardey-Verl., 2014. – 384 p.

**Praxishandbuch Ausstellungen in Bibliotheken /** hrsg. Von Petra Hauke. Berlin (u.a.): De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – xi, 453 p.:ill.

**Praxishandbuch Bibliotheksbaubau:** Planung—Gestaltung—Betrieb / Hrsg. von Petra Hauke, Klaus Ulrich Werner. Berlin (u.a.) De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – xi 528 p.

**Praxishandbuch Bibliotheksmanagement /** hrsg. von Rolf Griebel, Hildegard Schaffler u. Konstanze Söllner. – München u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2015. – xvii, 1040 p.

**Rechtsvorschriften für die Bibliotheksarbeit /** Deutscher Bibliotheksverband (Hg.). – 5., überarb. u. erw. Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2009. – xiv, 832 p. (Bibliotheksrecht; 3)

**Die Regionalbibliographie im digitalen Zeitalter:** Deutschland und seine Nachbarländer / hrsg. von Ludger Syré und Heidrun Wiesenmüller. – Frankfurt a. M.: Klostermann, 2006. – 426 p.; (Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie: Sonderbände; 90).

**Regionalbibliotheken in Deutschland:** mit einem Ausblick auf Österreich und die Schweiz / hrsg. von Bernd Hagenau. – Frankfurt am Main: Klostermann, 2000. – 467 p., map; (Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie: Sonderheft; 78).

**Rösch, Hermann:** Academic Libraires und Cyberinfrastructure: Das System wissenschaftlicher Kommunikation zu Beginn des 21. Jahrhunderts. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick, 2008. – 127 p., Abb. – (BIT online—Innovativ; 21).

**Rössler, Maria Theresia:** Neue Lese-Rezepte: kreative Methoden / Maria Theresia Rössler; Gudrun Sulzenbacher. – Innsbruck, Wien: Tyrolia, 2016. – 160 p.: ill.

**Sba-Curriculum:** Bibliotheksziele und Praxisbausteine (Jahrgangsstufe 1–10) / Hofmann, Helga [Hrsg.]. Aktualis. Ausg. – Frankfurt am Main: Stadtbücherei, Schulbibliothekarische Arbeitsstelle, 2012. – Losebl.-Ausg.: ill.

**Schade, Frauke:** Praxishandbuch Digitale Bibliotheksdienstleistungen: Strategie und Technik der Markenkommunikation / unter Mitarb. von Johannes Neuer. – Berlin: De Gruyter Saur, 2016. – 452 p.

**Spezialbibliotheken in Deutschland /** Red. Petra Hauke. Unter Mitarb. von Gisela Bartz. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 1996–2002. Bd. 1–5.

**Sühl-Strohmer, Wilfried:** Digitale Welt und Wissenschaftliche Bibliothek: Informationspraxis im Wandel. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2008. – 296 p. – (Bibliotheksarbeit; 11).

**Umlauf, Konrad:** Medienkunde / Konrad Umlauf unter Mitarbeit von Daniella Sarnowski. – 2., aktual. u. neu gefasste Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2006. – 350 p. – (Bibliotheksarbeit; 8)

**Umlauf, Konrad:** Moderne Buchkunde / Konrad Umlauf. – 2., aktual. u. neu gefasste Aufl. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2005. – 191 p.– (Bibliotheksarbeit; 2).

**Umstätter, Walther:** Einführung in die Katalogkunde: vom Zettelkatalog zur Suchmaschine / von Walther Umstätter u. Roland Wagner-Döbler. – 3. Aufl. d. Werkes von Karl Löffler, voll. neu bearb. – Stuttgart: Hiersemann, 2005. – xi, 171 p.: ill.

**Umstätter, Walther:** Lehrbuch des Bibliotheksmanagements. – Stuttgart: Hiersemann: 2011. – 258 p.

**Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare 1900–2000:** Festschrift / hrsg. von Engelbert Plassmann u. Ludger Syré. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2000. – 408 p.

**Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare 1900–2000:** Bibliographie und Dokumentation / zusammengest. von Felicitas Hundhausen. – Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2004. – xx, 541 p.

**40 Jahre Lektoratskooperation:** Geschichte, Facetten und Zukunft einer Idee / Haike Meinhardt, Andreas Mittrowann, Frank Seeger (Hrsg.). – Reutlingen: ekz, 2016. – 328 p.: ill.

**Wie viele Bibliotheken brauchen wir? /** hrsg. von Rolf Busch. – Bad Honnef: Bock und Herchen, 2004. – 294 p.

(Beiträge zur bibliothekarischen Weiterbildung; 17).

**Wiesenmüller, Heidrun; Horny, Silke:** Basiswissen RDA: Eine Einführung für deutschsprachige Anwender. – Berlin u.a.: De Gruyter Saur, 2015. – 320 p.

**Wissenschaftskommunikation im Netzwerk der Bibliotheken:** mit Beitr. von Walther Umstätter u.a. – Berlin: BibSpider, 2005. – 195 p.: ill.

**Wolf, Sabine:** Praxisbuch Schulbibliotheken / Sabine Wolf; Karsten Schuldt. – Schwalbach im Taunus: Debus Pädagogik Verlag, 2013. – 189 p.: ill.

**Zugang für alle:** Soziale Bibliotheksarbeit in Deutschland. – Hrsg. Ben Kaden und Maxi Kindling. – Berlin: BibSpider, 2007. – 273 p.

**Die Zukunft der Bibliotheken in Deutschland.** Eine Repräsentativbefragung der Bevölkerung ab 16 Jahre. / Institut für Demoskopie Allensbach (Hrsg.). – Allensbach 2016. 43 p.

**Periodicals and Open E-Journals**

**ABI-Technik:** Zeitschrift für Automation, Bau und Technik im Archiv-, Bibliotheks- und Informationswesen. München: Verlag Neuer Merkur. Published quarterly.

**Archivar.** Zeitschrift für Archivwesen / Düsseldorf: Landesarchiv NRW. Published quarterly

**Auskunft:** Zeitschrift für Bibliothek, Archiv und Information in Norddeutschland / hrsg. im Auftr. des Landesverbandes Hamburg im dbv. – Nordhausen: Bautz. Published quarterly.

**Bibliothek:** Forschung und Praxis. – Berlin u.a.: de Gruyter Saur. Published every four months.

**BiblioTheke:** Zeitschrift für katholische Bücherei- und Medienarbeit / hrsg. vom Borromäusverein. – Bonn: BV. Published quarterly.

**Bibliotheken heute** / hrsg. vom Landesbibliothekszentrum Rheinland-Pfalz. – Koblenz u.a.: LBZ. Published quarterly.

**Bibliotheksdienst** / hrsg. vom Landesbibliothekszentrum Rheinland-Pfalz. – Koblenz u.a.: LBZ. Published monthly

**Bibliotheksforum Bayern:** BFB / Hrsg.: Bibliotheksverbund Bayern, Bayerische Staatsbibliothek. – München: BVB. Published every four months.

**Bibliotheksmagazin.** Mitteilungen aus den Staatsbibliotheken in Berlin und München / Hrsg.: SBB und BSB. Published three times a year.

**BIS.** Das Magazin der Bibliotheken in Sachsen / Hrsg.: Sächsische Landesbibliothek — Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek Dresden (SLUB). Published three times a year.

**B.I.T.-Online:** Zeitschrift für Bibliothek, Information und Technologie mit aktueller Internet-Präsenz. – Wiesbaden: Dinges und Frick. Published bi-monthly.

**BuB:** Forum Bibliothek und Information; Fachzeitschrift des BIB e.V., Berufsverband Information Bibliothek. – Reutlingen: BIB. Ten issues per year.

**Buchprofile:** Medienempfehlungen für die Büchereiarbeit / Hrsg.: Borromäusverein e.V. Bonn, St. Michaelsbund. – Bonn: BV. Published quarterly.

**Dialog mit Bibliotheken** / Deutsche Nationalbibliothek. – Frankfurt am Main: DNB. Published every four months.

**Der evangelische Buchberater:** Zeitschrift für Buch- und Büchereiarbeit / Hrsg.: eliport Ev. Literaturportal. – Göttingen: VEB. Published quarterly.

**Information—Wissenschaft und Praxis:** IWP / Hrsg. von der Deutschen Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen. – Berlin: de Gruyter. Published quarterly.

**Informationspraxis.** www.informationspraxis.de

**kjl&m—Forschung, Schule, Bibliothek** / Hrsg.: Arbeitsgemeinschaft Jugendliteratur und Medien (AJuM) der GEW. – München kopaed-Verlag. Published quarterly.

**LIBREAS—Library Ideas.** Zeitschrift des Instituts für Bibliotheks- und Informationswissenschaft der HU Berlin. 2–4 issues per year

**LIES—Lesen, Informieren, Erleben in der Schulbibliothek:** Arbeitshilfen und Informationen für Schulbibliotheken; eine Schriftenreihe für die Arbeit in den zentralen Schulbibliotheken des Landes Rheinland-Pfalz / Kommission „Zentrale Schulbibliothek“ in Rheinland-Pfalz. – Mainz: KZS. Published twice a year

**o-bib.** Das offene Bibliotheksjournal / Hrsg. vom Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare. E-Journal. Four issues per year.

**ProLibris:** Mitteilungsblatt / hrsg. vom Verband der Bibliotheken des Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen und den Bezirksregierungen. – Bottrop: Pomp. Published every four months.

**Zeitschrift für Bibliothekswesen und Bibliographie:** vereinigt mit Zentralblatt für Bibliothekswesen; ZfBB: Organ des wissenschaftlichen Bibliothekswesens. – Frankfurt am Main: Klostermann. Published every two months.

**Internet Addresses, Blogs**

Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken (AspB) www.aspb.de

Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Verbundsysteme (AGV) www.ag-verbund.de

Arbeitsgemeinschaft Sammlung Deutscher Drucke (AG SDD) www.ag-sdd.de

Bayerische Staatsbibliothek (BSB) www.bsb-muenchen.de

Bertelsmann Stiftung www.bertelsmann-stiftung.de

Berufsverband Information Bibliothek (BIB) www.bib-info.de

Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V. (BID) www.bideutschland.de

Bibliothek & Information International (BII) www.bi-international.de

Bibliothek 2.0. Innovative Ideen für Bibliotheken, Freie Inhalte und Interessantes aus dem Web. www.bibliothek2null.de

bibliothekarisch.de – die berufliche Tätigkeit eines/er Bibliothekars/in betreffend bibliothekarisch.de/blog

Bibliotheksdienst (BIX) www.bix-bibliotheksdienst.de

Bibliotheksportal www.bibliotheksportal.de

Bibliotheksservice-Zentrum Baden-Württemberg (BSZ) www.bsz-bw.de

Bibliotheksverbund Bayern www.bib-bvb.de

Bielefeld Academic Search-Engine (BASE) www.base-search.de

Borromäusverein e.V. (BV) www.borromaeusverein.de

Büro der Europäischen Bibliotheksverbände (EBLIDA) www.eblida.org.

Conference of European National Libraries (CENL) www.cenl.org

Datenbank-Infosystem www.bibliothek.uni-regensburg.de/dbinfo

Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik (DBS) www.bibliotheksdienst.de

Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft—Wissenschaftliche Literaturverwaltungs- und Informationssysteme www.dfg.de/lis

Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen (DGI) www.dgi-info.de

Deutsche Nationalbibliothek (DNB) www.dnb.de

Deutscher Bibliotheksverband (dbv) www.bibliothekverband.de

Deutscher Bildungsserver www.bildungsserver.de

Deutsches Informationszentrum für Medizinische Dokumentation und Information (DIMDI) www.dimdi.de

DigiAuskunft www.hbz-nrw.de/produkte/digiauskunft

Digitale Bibliothek www.digibib.net

DiViBib GmbH www.divibib.de

Ekz.Bibliotheksservice GmbH www.ekz.de

Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek http://ezb.uni-regensburg.de/Fachstellen-Server www.fachstellen.de

Gemeinsamer Bibliotheksverbund www.gbv.de

Goethe-Institut www.goethe.de

Hessisches Bibliotheksinformationssystem www.hebis.de

Hochschulbibliothekszentrum NRW www.hbz-nrw.de

IFLA-Nationalkomitee Deutschland www.ifla-deutschland.de

InetBib www.inetbib.de/

Informationspraxis. Bibliotheken—Archive—Informationswesen. www.informationspraxis.de

Jugendliteratur und Medien (Zeitschrift kjl&m) www.ajum.de/html/kjl&m/kjl&m

Karlsruher Virtueller Katalog kvk.bibliothek.kit.edu/?digitalOnly=o&embedFulltitle=o&newTab=o

Kirchlicher Verbundkatalog www.kivk.de

Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken www.bibliotheksportal.de

Kooperativer Bibliotheksverbund Berlin-Brandenburg www.kobv.de

Kritische Bibliothek www.kribiblio.de

LIBREAS—Library Ideas libreas.wordpress.com

Nachrichten für Öffentliche Bibliotheken in NRW oebib.wordpress.com

o-bib—das offene bibliotheksjournal (VDB) www.o-bib.de

oebib—Öffentliche Bibliotheken in Bayern www.oebib.de

Onleihe (E-Book-Ausleihe) www.onleihe.de

OpenBibloJobs. Stellenangebote von Bibliotheken, Archiven und Informationseinrichtungen.jobs.openbiblio.eu/stellenangebote

plan3t.info. Bibliothekarische Stimmen. Independent, täglich. Plan3t.info

Sammlung Deutscher Drucke www.ag-sdd.de

SESAM (Portal für Bildungsmedien) www.lmz-bw.de

Schulbibliothek / Schulmedlothek www.schulmedlothek.de

Subito www.subito-doc.de

Verband der Bibliotheken des Landes NRW www.vbnw.de

Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare www.vdb-online.org

Virtuelle Deutsche Landesbibliographie www.landesbibliographie.de

Virtuelle Fachbibliothek Musikwissenschaft www.vifamusik.de

Zeitschriftendatenbank www.zeitschriftendatenbank.de

**Subject Index (Names, Institutions, Abbreviations)**

**A**

Academic and research libraries 18, 20, 52, 56, 113

Academic LinkShare 120, 159

Act on the Protection of Cultural Property in Germany 151

Adult education 32

Adult education centers (VHS) 32

Akademie für Leseförderung 35

Alliance for the Preservation of Art and Cultural Heritage 154

Alliance of Science Organisations in Germany 159

Alpha Points (Lesen macht Leben leichter project) 86

America Memorial Library 41

Anne Frank Shoah Library (Leipzig) 45

APBB = Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Parlaments- und Behördenbibliotheken 59

Archives 39

Archivist 92

AspB = Arbeitsgemeinschaft der Spezialbibliotheken 102

Association of Certified Librarians in Academic and Research Libraries (VdDB) 104

Association of German Archivists (VdA) 39

Association of German Librarians (VDB) 106

Association of Information and Library Professionals (BIB) 104, 105, 124

Association of Librarians and Library Assistants (VBA) 104

Association of the Libraries of the Federal State of North Rhine-Westphalia (vbnw) 102

Authority file 131

**B**

BA. Besprechungen und Annotationen 124

Bachelor degree courses 33, 39, 55, 92, 95

Basic Law (Grundgesetz - GG) 10, 23, 24, 63

BAT = Bundesangestelltentarif 93

Bavarian State Library (BSB) 47, 48, 123, 132, 155

BDB = Bundesvereinigung Deutscher Bibliotheksverbände 98

BEA = Bibliotheksentwicklungsagentur 109

Berlin City Library 41

Bertelsmann Foundation 99, 104, 108, 138

BIB = Berufsverband Information Bibliothek 104, 105, 124

Bibliographies of early imprints 132, 134

Bibliotheca Palatina (Heidelberg) 13

Bibliothek 2007 (position paper) 97

Bibliothekca Baltica 118

Bibliotheken '93 117

Bibliotheksdienst (journal) 21

Bibliothekspan '73 18, 98, 116

Bibliotheksportal (library gateway) of the knb 104

BIB-OPUS online document server 105

BID = Bibliothek & Information Deutschland e.V. 98, 99

BI-International 112

BIX = Bibliotheksindex 109

BKM = Beauftragter der Bundesregierung für Kultur und Medien 24, 99

Blogs 159

Blu-ray 31, 63

BMBF = Bundesministerium für Bildung und Forschung 26, 90

Börsenverein der Deutschen Buchhändler 15

Bologna Process 33, 35

Book buses 69

Book conservation 123

Book Halls, Hamburg 42

Book production 37, 38

Book review cooperation (LK) 108, 124

Book trade 38

Book Trade Marketing and Publisher Service (MVB) 44

Borromäus Society (BV) 16, 72, 82

Börsenblatt des Deutschen Buchhandels 36

Börsenverein des Deutschen Buchhandels 36

bpk Picture Agency (Berlin) 46

BSB = Bayerische Staatsbibliothek 47, 48, 123, 132, 155

BuB = Buch und Bibliothek (Zeitschrift) 105

Buch und Bibliothek Forum für Bibliothek und Information 105

Bund-Länder-Initiative zur Beschleunigung der Literatur- und Informationsdienste 137

BV = Borromäusverein 16

**C**

Cathedral libraries 10

CENL = Conference of European National Librarians 114

Central and Regional Library Berlin (ZLB) 66

Central Index of Digitized Imprints (ZVDD) 156



Central Subject Libraries 17, 48, 89  
Centre for Provenance Research 155  
Chamber of Commerce (Industrie- und Handelskammer) 96  
Children's libraries 73  
Childrens's and young people's libraries 75  
Church libraries 41, 61, 67  
Church public libraries 72  
CIB = Cloud-based Infrastructure for Library Data 127  
City libraries 15, 62, 67  
Civil service 93  
Classic Foundation of Weimar 41  
Cloud-based Infrastructure for Library Data - CIB 127  
Codex 11  
Collection of Exile Literature 45  
Collection of German Imprints 46, 47, 122, 123  
Collective wage agreements 93  
Combination library 145  
Commissioner of the Federal Government for Culture and Media (BKM) 99  
Commissions (dbv) 71, 83, 103, 106, 155  
Committee for Library Standards 125  
Common Library Network (GBV) 127  
Company works libraries 88  
Comprehensive schools (Gesamtschulen) 30, 77  
Conference of Training and Degree Courses in Library and Information Science 102  
Conference of Vice-Chancellors (HRK) 27  
Consortia 118  
Continuing professional education 32, 97  
Cooperation in subject indexing 124  
Cooperative information services 138  
Cooperative State Universities 34  
Coordination Office for the Preservation of the Written Cultural Heritage (KEK) 154  
Copyright law 36  
Corporate Body Authority File (GKD) 125  
Council libraries (Ratsbüchereien) 12, 51  
Council of Europe 114  
County libraries 61  
Court libraries (Hofbibliotheken) 13  
Cultural autonomy 24, 27, 34, 97  
Cultural heritage 22, 151

## D

Database Info-System (DBIS) 159  
DBI = Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut 21  
DBIS = Database Info-System 159  
DBK = Deutsche Bibliothekskonferenz 98, 116  
DBS = Deutsche Bibliotheksstatistik 62, 67, 104  
dbv = Deutscher Bibliotheksverband 100, 103  
DDB = Deutsche Digitale Bibliothek 153, 156

DDB = Die Deutsche Bibliothek 43  
Departmental libraries 54  
Descriptive Cataloguing Rules (RAK) 124  
Deutsche Akademie der Naturforscher Leopoldina 60  
Deutsche Bibliothek (DDB) 17  
Deutsche Bücherei 15, 17, 18, 43, 45, 122  
Deutsche Internetbibliothek 138  
Deutsche Nationalbibliothek 19, 43, 122, 158  
Deutscher Bibliothekartag 99, 105, 106  
Deutscher Bibliothekskongress 106  
Deutscher Städtetag 116  
DFG = Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft 26, 46, 118, 122, 159  
DGI = Deutsche Gesellschaft für Information und Wissen e.V. 89, 90, 103, 112  
Die Deutsche Bibliothek (DDB) 43  
DigiAuskunft 138, 139  
DigiBib = Digital Library NRW 128  
Digital Accessible Information System (DAISY) 87  
Digital library 26, 53  
Digital Library NRW (DigiBib) 128  
Digital literacy 78, 113, 144, 150  
Digitization 21, 48, 101, 114, 123, 133, 153, 155, 156  
Digitization Centre 46, 48, 155  
Diocesan libraries 61  
Distance learning 32  
DiViBib 108  
DMA = Deutsches Musikarchiv 43  
DNB = Deutsche Nationalbibliographie 15, 126  
DNB = Deutsche Nationalbibliothek 19, 43, 45, 122, 158  
Documentalist 92  
Documentation centers 89  
Document delivery services 126  
Dreiländerkatalog 130  
Duale Hochschule 34, 56  
Dual system 30  
Duchess Anna Amalia Library 20, 41, 52  
Duke August Library 52, 123, 132

## E

EasyCheck GmbH (ekz) 108  
E-audio 63, 108  
EBLIDA = European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations 106, 113  
E-books 38, 44, 63, 108, 142, 150  
EconBiz 49  
Econstar 49  
Einheitsbücherei 16  
E-journals 44, 131, 142, 150  
ekz Library Service 108, 124  
Electronic Periodicals Library (EZB) 131, 159  
Eliport / Das evangelische Literaturportal e.V. (Göttingen) 73  
Emergency networks 154  
E-papers 31, 44, 63, 108  
Europeana 114, 153, 156

European Bureau of Library, Information and Documentation Associations (EBLIDA) 113  
European Cultural Heritage label 151  
E-video 108  
EZB = Elektronische Zeitschriftenbibliothek 131, 159

## F

Fachinformationszentren (FIZ) 26  
Faculty libraries 54  
FAMI = Fachangestellter für Medien- und Informationsdienste 39, 92, 95  
Federal Association of German Library and Information Associations (BID) 98  
Federal Chancellor (Bundeskanzler) 24  
Federal Collective Tariff Agreement for the Public Service - TVÖD 93  
Federal Commission for Culture and Media (BKM) 24  
Federal Council (Bundesrat) 23  
Federal Employees' Tariff Agreement (BAT) 93  
Federal Framework Act Governing Higher Education (HRG) 33  
Federal Ministry of Education and Research (BMBF) 26, 90  
Federal Parliament (Bundestag) 23  
Federal President (Bundespräsident) 24  
Federal Programme for the Promotion of Information and Documentation 89  
Federal State Collective Tariff Agreement (TV-L) 93  
Federal States (Bundesländer) 23  
Federal Union of German Library and Information Associations e.V. (BID) 99  
Feel-good library 144  
FID = Fachinformationsdienste 46  
Filming (preservation) 123  
Fine arts and music conservatories 33  
FIZ = Fachinformationszentren 89  
FIZ Karlsruhe / Leibniz Institute of Information Infrastructure 89  
Förderverein Gefangenenbüchereien e.V. 88  
Foundation of the Central and State Library Berlin 41  
Foundation of the Germanic National Museum 41  
Framework Agreement on Research Funding 25  
Francke Foundations 41, 52  
Frankfurt Statement / Reading and Learning 3.0 78  
Friedrich Ebert Foundation 60

## G

Geh, Hans-Peter 113  
German Adult Education Association 32  
German Archaeological Institute 61  
German Armed Forces Centre for Military History and Social Sciences 60

German Association for Information and Knowledge (DGI) 112  
German Association of Special Libraries (ASpB) 58, 102  
German Association of Towns and Cities (Deutscher Städtetag) 101, 116  
German Book and Writing Museum 45  
German Books in Print (VLB) 36  
German Cancer Research Center 60  
German Central Library of Economics (ZBW) 41  
German Council of Science and Humanities 21, 25, 33, 116, 127  
German Digital Library (DDB) 153, 156  
German Exile Archive 45  
German Federal Armed Forces (Bundeswehr) 88  
German Incunabula Catalogue (INKA) 132  
German Institute for Japanese Studies 61  
German Internet Library (DIB) 138  
German Libraries' Award for Journalism 101  
German Library Association (dbv) 82, 100, 103  
German Library Conference (DBK) 98, 106, 116  
German Library Congress 99, 106  
German Library Institute (DBI) 21, 103  
German Library Statistics (DBS) 62, 67, 104  
German Literature Archive 61  
German Lost Art Foundation 155  
German Music Archive (DMA) 43  
German National Bibliography (DNB) 15, 44, 126  
German National Library Act 43  
German National Library (DNB) 19, 40, 43, 45, 122, 158  
German National Library of Economics (ZBW) 49  
German National Library of Medicine – Information Centre for Life Sciences ZB MED (Bonn and Cologne) 49  
German National Museum 60  
German Regional Bibliography (VDL) 50  
German Research Foundation (DFG) 26, 46, 122, 159  
German Science Museum 59  
German Society for Information and Knowledge e.V. / DGI 89, 90  
German Weather Center 59  
GI = Goethe-Institut 111  
GKD = Gemeinsame Körperschaftsdatei 125  
Global Trade Item Number (GTIN) 38  
GND = Gemeinsame Normdatei 125  
Goethe Institute (GI) 61, 111  
Google Books 155  
Guidelines for Patients' Libraries 87  
Gutenberg, Johannes 12  
GW = Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke 132  
Gymnasium (secondary school) 30, 77

## H

Hall library (Saalbibliothek) 12  
Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Austria 134  
Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Europa 134  
Handbook of Historical Book Collections in Germany 133  
Hauptschule (secondary school) 30  
HBFG = Hochschulbauförderungs-gesetz 33  
HBZ = Hochschulbibliothekszentrum (Köln) 104, 139  
Higher Education Building Financial Assistance Act (HBFG) 33  
HÖB = Hamburger Bücherhallen 42  
Hoffmann, Gustav 113  
Hospital libraries 87  
HRG = Hochschulrahmengesetz 33  
HRK = Hochschulrektorenkonferenz 27  
Humboldt University Berlin 96  
Hybrid library 149, 150

## I

ID = Informationsdienst 124  
IFLA = International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions 83, 99, 106, 113  
IFLA National Committee 113  
Illiterates 86, 140  
Image centres (Bildstellen) 30, 77, 92, 95  
Immigrants and libraries 70, 85  
Incunabula Short Titel Catalogue (ISTC) 132  
InfoDesk 139  
Information broker 92  
Information literacy 150  
Information manager 92  
Informationsdienst (ID) 108, 124  
Information Services Specialist 96  
Information society 160  
INKA = Inkunabelkatalog) 132  
Inner Mission 16  
Institute for Book and Manuscript Restoration 48  
Institute of Library Science Berlin 96  
Intercultural library work 103  
Interlibrary lending 135, 137  
International cooperation 112, 115  
International cultural cooperation 110  
International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) 83, 99, 106, 113  
International Frankfurt Book Fair 36  
International ISBN Agency 38  
International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL) 47, 136  
Inter Nationes 110  
ISBN 13 = International Standard Book Number 38  
ISIL = International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations 47, 136  
ISSN Centre 45

## J

Jahrbuch der Deutschen Bibliotheken (Yearbook of German Libraries) 106  
Johannes a Lasco Library 61

## K

Karl Preusker Medal 99  
Karlsruhe Virtual Catalog (KVK) 128  
KEK = Koordinierungsstelle für die Erhaltung des schriftlichen Kulturguts 154  
KGSt = Kommunale Gemeinschaftsstelle für Verwaltungsmanagement 25  
KIBA = Konferenz der informations- und bibliothekswissenschaftlichen Ausbildungs- und Studiengänge 102  
KII recommendations 90  
KIT = Karlsruhe Institute of Technology 128  
KMK = Kultusministerkonferenz der Länder 101  
knb = Kompetenznetzwerk für Bibliotheken 104  
Kopal = Kooperativer Aufbau eines Langzeitarchivs digitaler Informationen 158  
KVK = Karlsruher Virtueller Katalog 128

## L

Language courses 84, 85  
Latin American Institute 60  
League of European Research Libraries (LIBER) 106, 113  
Lectern Library (Pultbibliothek) 12  
Legal deposit 24, 39, 44, 47, 50, 67, 122, 157  
LIBER = Ligue des Bibliothèques Européennes de Recherche 106, 113  
LibOS / Library Operating System 127  
Libraries for the blind 86  
Libraries of higher education institutions 53  
Libraries of the future 151  
Library agency 146  
Library and School (Commission) 76  
Library buildings and equipment 20, 66  
Library computer centers 127  
Library Development Agency (BEA) 109  
Library discount agreement 37  
Library Index (BIX) 109  
Library networks 126  
Library of the Academy of Fine Arts Berlin 56  
Library of the Federal Constitutional Court 58  
Library of the Federal Office of Statistics 57  
Library of the Federal Supreme Court 58  
Library of the Foreign Office 57  
Library of the German Parliament 57  
Library of the German Patent Office 57  
Library of the Year (award) 101  
Library Service Centres 26, 72  
Library suppliers 107  
Life-long learning 97

Linked Open Data 159  
LIS = Wissenschaftliche Literatur-  
versorgungs- und Informations-  
systeme 119  
LK = Lektoratskooperation 108, 124  
LMSCloud (ekz) 108  
Local authority public libraries 67  
Local Government Association for  
Municipal Administration 25  
Long-term archiving 39, 43, 126, 158,  
159  
Lorenzen, Heinz-Jürgen 8  
Lux, Claudia 113

**M**

MARC 21 = Machine Readable  
Cataloguing 126  
Master of Library and Information  
Science (MLIS/MALIS) 95  
Master's degree courses 33, 39, 55,  
92, 95  
MDZ = Münchener Digitalisierungs-  
zentrum 48  
Media Centres 30  
Media industry 31  
Media literacy 30, 73, 78, 83, 88, 147, 150  
Medibus 87  
Medical libraries 87  
Memory of the World Programme 151  
Mobile libraries 69  
Monastic libraries 10, 61  
Munich Digitization Center (MDZ) 48  
Music libraries 63, 80  
MVB = Marketing und Verlagsservice  
des Buchhandels 44

**N**

NAPLE = National Authorities on  
Public Libraries in Europe 113  
National library 15  
National licence 119  
National literature provision 119  
National Periodicals Database (ZDB)  
130, 131  
Nazi plunder 155  
Nestor / German competence network  
for digital preservation 157  
Network library 145  
Network of Excellence for Libraries  
(knb) 21, 103, 104  
Nordelbisch Church Library 61

**O**

o-bib. Das offene Bibliotheksjournal  
(VDB) 106  
OCLC 127, 139  
Official publications 57  
One Person Libraries (OPL) 58  
Onleihe 63, 108  
Open Access 49, 90, 106, 119, 126, 128,  
157, 159  
OPL = One Personal Library 58

**P**

PAK (Abteilung Planung, Anleitung,  
Koordinierung) 20

Parliamentary libraries 57  
Patients' libraries 87  
Pay-per-view 90, 131  
Peace Prize of the German Book Trade 36  
Picture libraries (Artotheken) 63  
PISA studies 35, 75, 80  
PND = Personennamendatei 125  
Preservation and conservation 154, 155  
Prison libraries 67, 87  
Professional associations 98  
Professional Conference of German  
Library Service Centers 72  
Pro Libris (journal) 102  
Provenance principle (archives) 38  
Prussian Instructions (PI) 14  
Prussian State Library, Berlin 17  
Prussian Union Catalog  
(Preußischer Gesamtkatalog) 14  
Public libraries 16, 18, 21, 61, 75, 144  
Public library spending 67  
Public library system 67  
Public service 93  
Publishers 36

**Q**

Question Point 139

**R**

Rahmenvereinbarung Forschungs-  
förderung 25  
RAK = Regeln für die Alphabetische  
Katalogisierung 124  
RAK-WB = Regeln für die alphabetische  
Katalogisierung in wissenschaft-  
lichen Bibliotheken 126  
RDA = Resource Description and Access  
126  
Reading Foundation 82  
Reading promotion 35  
Recommendations for the Develop-  
ment of Academic and Research  
Libraries 116  
Refugees and libraries 70, 85  
Regeln für die alphabetische Katalo-  
gisierung in wissenschaftlichen  
Bibliotheken (RAK-WB) 126  
Regeln für die Schlagwortkatalo-  
gisierung (RSWK) 126  
Regional bibliographies 50  
Regional libraries 18, 52  
Regional library networks 130  
Resale price maintenance 37  
Research Center Jülich 59  
Research libraries 52  
Research Library of Gotha 52  
Resource Description and Access (RDA)  
126  
Retrospective digitization 156  
RSWK = Regeln für den Schlagwort-  
katalog 126  
Rural Central Libraries (Ländliche  
Zentralbibliothek) 19

**S**

Salary scales 93  
Sammlung Deutscher Drucke 46, 47,  
122, 123

Saxonian State Library – State and  
University Library of Dresden 20  
Scholars' libraries (Gelehrten-  
bibliothek) 12  
School libraries 30, 61, 67, 75, 78  
School Libraries Office (Schulbiblio-  
thekarische Arbeitsstelle) 146  
School media centres 78  
School system 30  
Search engines 159  
Semantic Web 126, 159  
Senate Library Berlin 41, 57  
SESAM (education portal) 30  
Single-tier library system 54  
Social library work 85, 88  
Social media 83, 100, 113, 160  
Social software 159  
Specialised Information Services (FID)  
46, 122  
Special libraries 56, 61  
Special user groups 85, 88  
Standing Conference of the Cultural  
Ministers (KMK) 27, 101  
State and regional libraries 52  
State Library of Berlin / Prussian  
Cultural Heritage 13, 47, 123  
State Library of Lower Saxony 123  
State Media Centres (Landesmedien-  
zentren) 30  
State Parliament (Landtag) 26  
State service centres for public  
libraries 72  
State Service Centres for Public  
Libraries 26  
Stiftung Lesen (Mainz) 35  
St. Michael's Association 16, 72, 82  
subito 138  
Subito 120  
Subject-based information centers –  
FIZ 89  
Subject indexing cooperation 124

**T**

Teaching library 149  
Technical academies 32  
Technical Information Library (TIB)  
48, 158  
Technical Library Assistant for Media  
and Information Services (FAMI) 39,  
92, 95  
Technical university 54, 55  
Tertiary education 35  
Theological seminaries 32  
TIB = Technische Informationsbiblio-  
thek 48, 158  
Training 32, 97  
Translations 37  
Troop libraries 88  
TV-L = Tarifvertrag der Länder 93  
TVÖD = Tarifvertrag Öffentlicher  
Dienst 93  
Two-tier library system 54

**U**

UNESCO Convention on the Protection  
and Promotion of the Diversity of  
Cultural Expressions 114

Unification Treaty (Einigungsvertrag)  
24  
Union Catalog of Incunabula 132  
Union catalogs 126  
Universal Authority File (GND) 125  
Universities 34  
Universities of Applied Sciences  
(Fachhochschulen) 33, 34  
University autonomy 33  
University libraries 53  
University Libraries 34  
University Library Service Centre –  
HBZ (Cologne) 104, 139  
University of Applied Sciences  
Hamburg 97  
University press 157

**V**

Vascoda 90, 120  
VBA = Verein der Bibliothekare und  
Assistenten 104  
vbnw = Verband der Bibliotheken des  
Landes Nordrhein-Westfalen 102  
VD 16 = Verzeichnis der im deutschen  
Sprachbereich erschienenen Drucke  
des 16. Jahrhunderts 132  
VD 17 = Verzeichnis der im deutschen  
Sprachbereich erschienenen Drucke  
des 17. Jahrhunderts 133  
VD 18 = Verzeichnis der im deutschen  
Sprachraum erschienenen Drucke  
des 18. Jahrhunderts 133  
VdA = Verband deutscher Archivarinnen  
und Archivare e.V. 39  
VDB-Mitteilungen 106  
VDB = Verein Deutscher Bibliothekar-  
innen und Bibliothekare e.V. 106  
VdDB = Verein der Diplom-Biblio-  
thekare an wissenschaftlichen  
Bibliotheken 104  
VDL = Virtuelle Deutsche Landes-  
bibliographie 50  
VHS = Volkshochschule 32  
Virtual Subject Libraries 120, 159  
VLB = Verzeichnis Lieferbarer Bücher  
36  
Vocational Training Act  
(Berufsbildungsgesetz) 30  
Vocational training schools  
(Berufsschule) 30, 96  
Volksbüchereien 15  
Volkswagen University Library (Berlin)  
56

**W**

Web 2.0 31, 128  
webis 120  
WiFi 66, 70, 84, 115  
Wikipedia 159  
Wissenschaftliche Allgemeinbibliothek  
(WAB) 18  
Wissenschaftliche Stadtbibliothek 51  
Working Group of Parliamentary and  
Administration Libraries (APBB) 59  
Working Group on Patients' Libraries  
87  
WorldCat 127

**Y**

Young people's libraries 73

**Z**

ZB MED = Deutsche Zentralbibliothek  
für Medizin 49  
ZBW = Deutsche Zentralbibliothek für  
Wirtschaftswissenschaften 41  
ZDB = Zeitschriftendatenbank 130,  
131  
ZEIT-Stiftung Ebelin und Gerd Bucerius  
101  
Zentrales Verzeichnis Digitalisierter  
Drucke 156  
ZLB = Zentral- und Landesbibliothek  
Berlin 66  
ZVDD = Zentrales Verzeichnis Digitali-  
sierter Drucke 128, 156









